

Mladen Engelsfeld

CROATIAN THROUGH CONVERSATION

HRVATSKI U RAZGOVORU

Twelfth edition
Dvanaesto izdanje



Mladen Engelsfeld

**CROATIAN THROUGH
CONVERSATION**

**HRVATSKI U
RAZGOVORU**

Twelfth edition
Dvanaesto izdanje



Mozaik knjiga
GRUPA MLADINSKA KNJIGA

PREFACE TO THE THIRD EDITION

The language course, *Croatian Through conversation* (third, revised and enlarged edition), is designed for all those in English-speaking countries, who want to acquire a basic knowledge of contemporary spoken Croatian. A phrase-book has been appended to help the tourist.

Croatian is the dominant spoken and literary language in western Yugoslavia, including the world-famous Dalmatian coast and Croatian Littoral. Dalmatia, especially Dubrovnik, Split and Hvar, was the cradle of Croatian literature, which has had a great and old tradition of five centuries.

Croatian is not only the Language of the Croats in Croatia; such language (ijekavian), with some differences, is also spoken in Bosnia and Herzegovina (Bosna i Hercegovina), Montenegro (Crna Gora) and western Serbia (zapadna Srbija).

It is hoped therefore that this book will be useful both to potentially serious students of Croatian culture and language and to curious and intelligent tourists. The lessons consist of situations in which the learner or tourist may very well find himself.

The book is published by Matica iseljenika Hrvatske (The Emigrant Center of Croatia), which is interested in giving people of our descent some information about the language and country of their ancestors.

The author

Zagreb 1972.

PREDGOVOR TREĆEM IZDANJU

Jezični tečaj *Hrvatski u razgovoru* (treće, prošireno i popravljeno izdanje) namijenjen je svima onima iz zemalja engleskoga jezičnog područja koji žele steći osnove suvremenoga govornog hrvatskog jezika. Knjizi je pridodan rječnik fraza da pomogne turistu pri njegovu prvom susretu sa stranom zemljom.

Hrvatskim govornim i književnim jezikom pretežno se govori u zapadnoj Jugoslaviji, uključujući i u svijetu poznatu dalmatinsku obalu i Hrvatsko primorje. Dalmacija, posebno Dubrovnik, Split i Hvar, kolijevka je hrvatske književnosti koja ima veliku i staru tradiciju od pet stoljeća.

Hrvatski jezik nije samo jezik Hrvata u Hrvatskoj; takvim se jezikom, uz neke razlike, također govori u Bosni i Hercegovini, Crnoj Gori i zapadnoj Srbiji.

Nadamo se da će knjiga biti korisna potencijalno ozbiljnim proučavateljima hrvatske kulture i jezika, a i radoznalom i inteligentnom turistu. Vježbe se sastoje od situacija iz svakidašnjeg života.

Knjigu je izdala Matica iseljenika Hrvatske, koja Matica želi da ljudima našeg podrijetla pruži neka osnovna znanja o zemlji i jeziku njihovih predaka.

Autor

Zagreb, 1972.

PREFACE TO THE FOURTH EDITION

The great demand for beginners course in contemporary literary Croatian written from the point of view of a foreign language learner has necessitated this fourth and enlarged edition of my language course *Croatian Through Conversation*. However, I have always been aware that a complete language course in contemporary Croatian for both native and non-native speakers, would require 100-150 lessons, and not 30, or only 24 short ones, as I was allowed to write in the first edition of my course. A complete course in Croatian, which could also serve as a guide through Croatian culture, civilization and history, remains a task awaiting some future writer.

The author

Zagreb 1981.

PREDGOVOR ČETVRTOM IZDANJU

Velika potražnja za početnicom suvremenoga hrvatskoga književnog jezika napisanom s gledišta stranog učenika dovela je do ovoga četvrtog i proširenog izdanja tečaja *Hrvatski u razgovoru*. Međutim, oduvijek sam bio svjestan činjenice da bi cjelovit tečaj hrvatskog jezika i za domaćeg i za stranog učenika zahtijevao 100-150 vježbi, a ne 30, ili samo 24 kratke, koliko mi je bilo dopušteno napisati u prvome izdanju. Cjelovit tečaj hrvatskog jezika, koji bi mogao poslužiti i kao vodič kroz hrvatsku kulturu, civilizaciju i povijest, zadatak je koji očekuje budućeg pisca.

Autor

Zagreb, 1981.

PREFACE TO THE SEVENTH EDITION

The constant demand for this book has occasioned its seventh impression. Some people use it for learning Croatian, some for learning English. All of this proves that there is some secret virtue in the book.

I feel great joy when people of Croatian descent or people of foreign nationality tell me that they have learnt Croatian from my language course. This makes me think of writing another, thoroughly revised and enlarged edition, in fact, of a completely new Croatian language course.

The author

Zagreb 1993.

PREDGOVOR SEDMOM IZDANJU

Neprestana potreba za ovom knjigom, dovela je, eto, i do njezina sedmog izdanja. Nekima ona služi za učenje hrvatskoga, nekima za učenje engleskoga. Sve to dokazuje da knjiga posjeduje i neke skrivene vrline.

Najveću radost osjećam kada mi ljudi hrvatskog podrijetla ili pak strani državljani kažu da su hrvatski naučili iz mog udžbenika. I to me navodi na pomisao o novome, popravljenom i proširenom izdanju, zapravo, o posve novome jezičnom tečaju hrvatskog jezika.

Autor

Zagreb, 1993.

SADRŽAJ (CONTENTS)

1. vježba (Prva vježba)

15

DOBRO JUTRO

1. The Latin Alphabet. 2. Accents. 3. Pronunciation. 4. Vowels. 5. The vowel *a*. 6. The vowel *o*. 7. Consonants. 8. The vowel (consonant) *r*. 9. The consonant *r* used as a vowel. 10. The consonant *c*. 11. The consonant *ž*. Exercises.

2. vježba (Druga vježba)

20

ŠTO RADITE?

1. The vowel *e*. 2. The vowel *u*. 3. The vowel *i*. 4. The consonant *j*. 5. The consonant *d*. 6. The consonant *b*. 7. The consonant *š*. 8. The consonant *č*. 9. The consonant *ć*. 10. The consonant *g*. 11. The consonant *t*. 12. The consonant *k*. Exercises.

3. vježba (Treća vježba)

26

GOVORITE LI HRVATSKI

1. Adjectives. 2. The consonant *p*. 3. The consonant *m*. 4. The consonant *v*. 5. The consonant *h*. 6. The consonant *n*. 7. The consonant *s*. 8. The consonant *l*. 9. The consonant *z*. Exercises.

4. vježba (Četvrta vježba)

31

DOLAZAK U ZAGREB

1. The Present Tense of the verb *biti* (to be). 2. *Ti* (thou, you) and *vi* (you). 3. Nouns. 4. Absence of the Article. 5. Pronouns. 6. The consonant *d*. Exercises.

5. vježba (Peta vježba)	36
<hr/>	
U HOTELU „ESPLANADE-INTERKONTINENTAL“	
1. The Present Tense of the verb <i>imati</i> (to have). 2. Nouns. 3. Adjectives. 4. The conjunction <i>i</i> (and). 5. The consonant <i>dž</i> . Exercises.	
6. vježba (Šesta vježba)	42
<hr/>	
DORUČAK	
1. Declension of masculine nouns. 2. The noun <i>cvijeće</i> (flowers). 3. The Present Tense of the verb <i>voljeti</i> (to like). 4. Adjectives. 5. Pronouns. 6. The consonant <i>nj</i> . Exercises.	
7. vježba (Sedma vježba)	49
<hr/>	
NA PUTU DO »MATICE«	
1. Plural of monosyllabic masculine nouns. 2. Mobile <i>a</i> .	
8. vježba (Osma vježba)	53
<hr/>	
HRVATSKA MATICA ISELJENIKA	
1. Declension of feminine nouns. 2. Neuter nouns. 3. The infinitive. Exercises.	
9. vježba (Deveta vježba)	58
<hr/>	
RAZGOVOR U »MATICI«	
1. The Present Tense of the verb <i>ići</i> (to go). 2. Feminine nouns. Exercises.	
10. vježba (Deseta vježba)	65
<hr/>	
U AUTOMOBILU	
1. Declension of neuter nouns. 2. Adjectives. 3. Prepositions. Preposition <i>u</i> (in, to, into). Exercises.	

11. vježba (Jedanaesta vježba)	71
<hr/>	
OBJED	
1. Consonantal changes. 2. Mobile <i>a</i> . 3. Prepositions (continued). Preposition <i>na</i> (on, for, in). Exercises.	
12. vježba (Dvanaesta vježba)	78
<hr/>	
U PRODAVAONICI GRAMOFONSKIH PLOČA	
1. The Present Tense of the verb <i>kupovati</i> (to buy). 2. Possessive pronouns. 3. Prepositions (continued). Preposition <i>o</i> (about). Exercises.	
13. vježba (Trinaesta vježba)	85
<hr/>	
U BANCI	
1. The Present Tense of the verb <i>moći</i> (to be able). 2. Verbs (repetition). Exercises.	
14. vježba (Četrnaesta vježba)	91
<hr/>	
U »SAMOBORCU«	
1. Reflexive verbs. 2. Adjectives. Exercises.	
15. vježba (Petnaesta vježba)	98
<hr/>	
NA BALKONU BAKINE KUĆE	
1. Indefinite adjectives. 2. Declension of indefinite adjectives. Exercises.	
16. vježba (Šesnaesta vježba)	103
<hr/>	
U PRODAVAONICI NARODNIH RUKOTVORINA	
1. Declension of definite adjectives. 2. The usage of the indefinite and the definite adjective. Exercises.	

17. vježba (Sedamnaesta vježba)

U RESTORANU »LAVICA«

110

1. The Present Tense of the verb *htjeti* (to want, to wish for). Exercises.

18. vježba (Osamnaesta vježba)

ISELJENIČKI PIKNIK U SAMOBORU

115

1. Future Tense. 2. The interrogative conjunction *zar*. 3. Prepositions (continued). Preposition *za* (for, behind). Exercises.

19. vježba (Devetnaesta vježba)

NA POVRATKU IZ KINA

121

1. Declension of feminine nouns (continued). 2. Prepositions (continued). Preposition *iz* (from). Exercises.

20. vježba (Dvadeseta vježba)

ŠETNJA SAMOBOROM

127

1. The Perfect Tense of the verb *biti* (to be). 2. The active past participle. 3. The pronouns *one* (they) i *ona* (they). 4. The infinitive base. 5. Verbs with irregular participles. 6. Prepositions (continued). Preposition *do* (to, as far as, till, untill). Exercises.

21. vježba (Dvadeset prva vježba)

IZLET U HRVATSKO ZAGORJE

134

1. The use of the Perfect Tense. 2. The active past participles of the verbs *reći* (to say) and *jesti* (to eat). Exercises.

22. vježba (Dvadeset druga vježba)

NA BLAGAJNI KAZALIŠTA

138

1. Personal pronouns and the reflexive pronouns *sebe* or *se*. 2. The declension of personal pronouns and of the pronoun *sebe* (*se*). 3. The Accusative singular of the personal pronouns *on* and *ona*. 4. Prepositions (continued). The preposition *nasuprot* (opposite, facing). Exercises.

23. vježba (Dvadeset treća vježba)

NA OPERI U HRVATSKOM NARODNOM
KAZALIŠTU

145

1. Enclitics. 2. Order of unstressed personal pronouns and the reflexive pronoun *sebe* used in the context. 4. The reflexive pronoun *sebe* or *se*. Exercises.

24. vježba (Dvadeset četvrta vježba)

ŠETNJA GORNJIM GRADOM

151

1. Assimilation caused by *j*. 2. The adjective stem. 3. The comparative. 4. The superlative. 5. Irregular adjectives. 6. The declension of the comparative and the superlative. 7. *Than* after a comparative or superlative. 8. Prepositions (continued). Preposition *s, sa* (with). Exercises.

25. vježba (Dvadeset peta vježba)

VOŽNJA JADRANSKOM MAGISTRALOM

159

1. The Present Conditional. 2. Prepositions (continued). Preposition *kraj* (near, beside). Exercises.

26. vježba (Dvadeset šesta vježba)

HRVATSKA BRATSKA ZAJEDNICA

164

1. Verbal aspect. 2. Imperfective and perfective verbs. 3. Voiced and unvoiced consonants. 4. Consonantal changes. Exercises.

27. vježba (Dvadeset sedma vježba) 171

DUBROVNIK

1. The imperative. 2. Negative imperative. 3. The imperative of *reći* (to say) and *pomoći* (to help). 4. The active past participle of the verb *ići* (to go). 5. Adjectival adverbs. 6. Prepositions (continued). Prepositions *od* (from, of, than), *kod* (at), *duž* (along), and *osim* (besides). Exercises.

28. vježba (Dvadeset osma vježba) 177

HOTEL „CROATIA“ U CAVTATU

1. Affirmative and negative forms of the verb *biti* (to be). 2. Demonstrative pronouns *ovaj*, *taj* and *onaj*. Exercises.

29. vježba (Dvadeset deveta vježba) 183

OJ, BUDI SVOJ!

1. Four different stems of the verb *biti* (to be). 2. The imperative of *biti* (to be). The possessive pronoun *svoj*, *a*, *e*. 4. The declension of the possessive pronoun *svoj*, *a*, *e*. The word *sam*. Exercises.

30. vježba (Trideseta vježba) 189

DO VIĐENJA IDUĆE GODINE

PHRASE-BOOK FOR TOURISTS

(RJEČNIK FRAZA ZA TURISTE)

1. GREETINGS - EVERYDAY EXPRESSIONS - SHOPPING (POZDRAVI - SVAKIDAŠNJI IZRIČAJI - KUPOVANJE) 195
2. FOOD AND DRINK (HRANA I PIĆE)
In the restaurant: Breakfast, Lunch and Dinner (U restoranu: Doručak, objed i večera). 197

3. IN THE HOTEL (U HOTELU) 203
4. IN THE BANK (U BANCI) 205
5. TIME - THE DAYS OF THE WEEK - THE NAMES OF THE MONTHS - SEASONS AND POINTS OF THE COMPASS - THE WEATHER (VRIJEME - DANI U TJEDNU - IMENA MJESECI - GODIŠNJA DOBA I STRANE SVIJETA - VRIJEME) 206
6. NUMERALS (BROJEVI)
a) Cardinal Numerals (Glavni brojevi), b) Ordinal numerals (Redni brojevi) 209
7. Dictionary (Rječnik) 213
8. Index (Kazalo) 249

1. vježba (Prva vježba)

DÒBRO JÛTRO

- Mary:** Dòbro jÛtro, djèco.
Jane: Dòbro jÛtro, màma.
Joseph: Dòbro jÛtro.
Edward: Dòbro jÛtro, tاتا.
Mary: Kàko ste, djèco?
John: Dòbro.
Jane: Vrlo dòbro.
Joseph: Štò radite?
John: Učimo.
Joseph: Štò?
John: Učimo hrvatski jèzik.

Words and phrases

prva (f.)	- first
vježba (f.)	- lesson
dobro	- good, well, fine
jutro (n.)	- morning
dobro jutro	- good morning
djeco	- children; <i>djeco</i> is the vocative plural of the word <i>dijete</i> (n.)
mama (f.)	- mother
tata (m.)	- father
kako ste?	- how are you?
kako ste, djeco?	- how are you, children?
dobro	- well, fine
vrlo dobro	- very well, just fine
što?	- what?
što radite?	- what are you doing?
učimo	- we are learning (studying)
hrvatski (m.)	- Croatian
jezik (m.)	- language
učimo hrvatski jezik	- we are learning Croatian

Conversational expressions

dobro jutro	- good morning
što radite?	- what are you doing?
učimo hrvatski jezik	- we are learning Croatian

Grammatical explanation

1. The Latin Alphabet

In the Croatian language there is one alphabet: the Latin. It is called *abeceda* or *alfabet*.

A, B, C, Č, Ć, D, DŽ, Đ, E, F, G, H, I, J, K, L, LJ, M, N, NJ, O, P, R, S, Š, T, U, V, Z, Ž.

In the Croatian language there are 5 vowels and 25 consonants.

Vowels: a, e, i, o, u

Consonants: b, c, č, ć, d, dž, đ, f, g, h, j, k, l, lj, m, n, nj, p, r, s, š, t, v, z, ž

2. Accents

The Croatian accent system is not simple; in rural regions it is especially complicated, involving word tone and vowel length after the accented syllable. The accent can fall on any syllable, but usually occurs on the first and only very rarely on the last.

For the sake of simplicity two accents are used in this book: the short (`), e.g. djèco, and the long (´), e.g. Zàgreb. The accent makes the syllable on which it falls short or long. Short and long syllables in Croatian roughly correspond to short and long syllables in English, e.g.: lùk (m.) - onion, lùk (m.) - bow, arch; fit (be the right measure for), feet (plural of foot).

The sign - is used to denote the length of a vowel after the accentuated syllable, e. g. ràzglēdam (I am having a look around).

3. Pronunciation

In the Croatian language almost every letter is pronounced. There are no silent letters as in English.

Remember: *In Croatian almost every letter is pronounced as it is written.*

4. Vowels

There are 5 vowels in the Croatian language: *a, e, i, o, u*. The consonant *r* may also be used as a vowel.

All the vowels are pronounced very clearly. The pronunciation of the vowels is not affected by their position in the word or by the stress of the word.

Remember: *In Croatian there are no diphthongs.*

5. The vowel *a*

The vowel *a* is similar to the first element of the English diphthong *au* (out, shout). Vowel *a* is more closed than English *a* in *father* and more open than English *a* in *fat*.

Exercises:

tata (father)	Amerika (America)	sad (now)
mama (mother)	kava (coffee)	baka (grandmother)
tama (darkness)	učenica (pupil)	kako (how)

6. The vowel *o*

The vowel *o* is similar to the first element of the English diphthong *ou* (know, though). The pronunciation of the vowel *o* is somewhere between the corresponding vowels in the English words *hot* and *ought* (roughly like American »ought«).

Exercises:

dobro (well, fine)	kasno (late)	more (sea)
ovo (this)	soba (room)	vino (wine)
ovdje (here)	pod (floor)	kako (how)

7. Consonants

The pronunciation of the consonant is approximately the same as that of their English equivalents. The difference between Croatian and English consonants is that the consonants in Croatian are pronounced as they are written.

8. The vowel (consonant) *r*

Rolled or trilled *r* (prva, Zagreb) is pronounced like Scottish *r* in *berry*; it is not like the English sound but more like the German *r*; it is trilled (rolled) with one »tap«. The tip of the tongue should be pressed against the teeth ridge (the upper gum ridge). The tongue vibrates against the teeth ridge.

Exercises:

prva (first)	dobro (well, fine)
jutro (morning)	raditi (to work)
vrlo (very)	hrvatski (Croatian)

9. The consonant *r* used as a vowel

The consonant *r* may be used as a vowel when it occurs:

a) between two consonants e. g.

vrlo (very)	krv (blood)
VRT (garden)	smrt (death)
prst (finger)	trg (square)

b) initially, i. e. at the beginning of a word before another consonant e.g.

rt (headland, promontory)
rda (rust)
rdav (bad)

10. The consonant *c*

C is always pronounced *ts* (cats, lots). It is never pronounced *k* or *s*.

Exercises:

djeca (children)	blagovaonica (dining-room)
crven (red)	cvijeće (flowers)
crn (black)	starac (old man)

11. The consonant *ž*

The consonant *ž* is pronounced like the *s* in *measure* or *leisure*.

Exercises:

vježba (lesson)	žena (woman)
muž (husband)	željeti (to want)
živjeli (cheers)	žedan (thirsty)

Exercises

Translate into Croatian:

(1)

1. Good morning.
2. How are you?
3. Very well.
4. What are you doing?
5. We are learning Croatian.

2. vježba (Druga vježba)

ŠTÒ RÀDITE?

- Joseph:** Dòbar dán, djèco.
Svi: Dòbar dán.
Joseph: Štò ràdite?
Edward: Učimo
Joseph: Štò učite?
Edward: Učimo hrvatski. Učimo svàki dán.
Jane: Dòbar dán. Dòbro jùtro. Dòbar večer. Kàko ste? Štò ràdite? Làku nóć.
Edward: Izvòlite sjèsti. Jèste li ùmorni?
John: Žèlite li cigarètu? Žèlite li nèšto pòpiti?
Mary: Izvrсно, djèco. Pa vi vèć govòrite hrvatski.
John: Dà, ali máló.

Words and phrases

- druga (f.) – second
dobar dan – good day (literal translation); the Croats say *dobar dan* practically the whole day except early in the morning, when they say *dobro jutro*, or in the evening, when they say *dobro veče* or *dobar večer* or *dobro veče* (the noun evening can be masculine (večer), feminine (veče) or neuter (veče))
svi – all
što učite? – what are you learning (studying)?; *učite* is the second person plural of the verb *učiti* (to learn, to study)
svaki – every
dan – day
svaki dan – every day
dobar večer – good evening
laku noć – good night
izvolite sjesti – please (do) sit down; take a seat, please
jeste li umorni? – are you tired?

- želite li? – do you want?; would you like?
cigareta (f.) – cigarette
želite li cigaretu? – do you want a cigarette?
nešto – something
popiti – drink
želite li nešto – would you like something to drink?
popiti? –
izvrсно – excellent
pa – then, so, and, but
vi – you
već – already
pa vi već – but you already speak Croatian
govorite hrvatski –
da – yes
ali – but
malo – a little
da, ali máló – yes, just a little

Conversational expressions

- dobar dan – good day (literal translation)
svaki dan – every day
dobar večer – good evening
laku noć – good night
izvolite sjesti – please (do) sit down; take a seat, please
želite li cigaretu? – do you want a cigarette?
želite li nešto – would you like something to drink?
popiti? –
malo – a little

Grammatical explanation

1. The vowel *e*

The vowel *e* is similar to the English vowel *e* in words like *men* or *bed*.

Exercises:

- | | |
|------------------|-----------------|
| med (honey) | žena (wife) |
| vježba (lesson) | sestra (sister) |
| djeca (children) | učenica (pupil) |

2. The vowel *u*

The vowel *u* is similar to the corresponding English vowel in words like *room*, *two*, *new*, or *few*. But it is shorter.

Exercises:

luk (onions)	jutro (morning)
student (student)	učimo (we are learning)
kruh (bread)	umorni (tired)

3. The vowel *i*

The vowel *i* is similar to the corresponding English vowel in words like *she*, *we* or *key*. However, it is shorter.

Exercises:

mi (we)	izvolite (please)
pivo (beer)	učimo (we are learning)
govoriti (speak)	popiti (to drink)

4. The consonant *j*

The consonant *j* is always pronounced like the *y* in *yes* or *you*.

Exercises:

jutro (morning)	sjesti (to sit down)
djeca (children)	još (still)
jezik (language)	lijepo (nice)

5. The consonant *d*

The consonant *d* is somewhat different from its English counterpart. It is pronounced by pressing the tip of the tongue against the back of the upper teeth, and not against the teeth ridge (the upper gum ridge) as in English.

Exercises:

dobro (well, fine)	druga (second)
djeca (children)	doručak (breakfast)
da (yes)	gladan (hungry)

6. The consonant *b*

The consonant *b* is similar to the corresponding English consonant in words like *bell*, *bill*, and *book*.

Exercises:

dobro (well, fine)	vježba (lesson)
dobar dan (good morning)	brat (brother)
Zagreb (Zagreb)	soba (room)

7. The consonant *š*

The consonant *š* (*što*) is pronounced *sh* (show, shed).

Exercises:

što (what?)	pošta (post-office)
šest (six)	štap (walking-stick)
još (still)	naš (our)

8. The consonant *č*

The consonant *č* is popularly called *hard č* (učimo) and is pronounced *ch* (archer, church). It is pronounced with tongue pressure against the teeth ridge (the upper gum ridge).

Exercises:

učimo (we are learning)	čist (clean)
doručak (breakfast)	sunčan (sunny)
čaj (tea)	pločnik (pavement)

9. The consonant *ć*

The consonant *ć* is popularly called *soft ć* (Juranić, noć) and is pronounced like *t* in *tune*. More precisely, the sound *ć* is somewhere between *ch* of *chalk* and *tu* of *tune*. To pronounce the sound correctly the tip of the tongue should be lightly pressed against the front palate (gum).

Exercises:

noć (night)	cvijeće (flowers)
već (already)	komadić (small piece)
kći (daughter)	kuća (house)

10. The consonant *g*

The consonant *g* is similar to the corresponding English sound *g*. It is pronounced like the *g* in *get*, and never like the *g* in *gentle*.

Exercises:

druga (second)	Zagreb (Zagreb)
cigareta (cigarette)	supruga (wife)
govoriti (to speak)	grad (town)

11. The consonant *t*

The consonant *t* in Croatian is not quite the same as its corresponding sound *t* in English. It is not pronounced with the strong puff of breath (aspiration) which is found in the English sound *t*. It is therefore less emphatic.

Exercises:

jutro (morning)	što (what)?
tata (father)	što radite (what are you doing)?
hrvatski (Croatian)	nešto (something)

12. The consonant *k*

The consonant *k* is not quite the same as its corresponding sound *k* in English. It is not pronounced with the strong puff of breath (aspiration) often found in the English sound *k*. It is therefore less emphatic than in English.

Exercises:

kako (how)?	laku noć (good night)
hrvatski (Croatian)	svaki (every)
jezik (language)	cigareta (cigarette)

Exercises

Translate into Croatian:

(1)

1. Good day. Good morning. Good evening. Good night.
2. Take a seat, please. Are you tired?
3. Do you want a cigarette? Would you like something to drink?
4. But you already speak Croatian.
5. We are learning Croatian.

Translation from Lesson 1:

(1)

1. Dobro jutro.
2. Kako ste?
3. Vrlo dobro.
4. Što radite?
5. Učimo hrvatski.

3. vježba (Treća vježba)

GÖVORITE LI HRVATSKI?

- Mary:** Dòbar dán djèco. Kàko ste? Štò rádite?
John: Dòbar dán, màma. Kàko si ti? Izvòli sjèsti.
Mary: Hvála, dòbro.
Jane: Dòbar dán, màma, John, Edward i ja ùčimo hrvatski.
Edward: Dòbar dán, màma. Kàko si? Jèsi li ùmorna?
Mary: A jèsi li ti ùmoran? Johne i Jane, jèste li vi ùmorni?
John: Nismo ùmorni, ùzbuđeni smo – jer sutra putujemo u Zàgreb.
Mary: Gòvorite li hrvatski.
Edward: Dà, màlo. Gòvorim màlo hrvatski. Màlo gòvorimo, mnògo ùčimo.
Mary: Nisam ùmorna, ùzbuđena sam – jer sutra putujemo u Zàgreb. Nàš Zàgreb.

26

Word and phrases

treća (f.)	– third
ti	– you (thou); <i>ti</i> is the first person singular of the pronoun <i>ti</i> . It is used in addressing relatives, friends, and children.
kako si (ti)?	– how are you?
izvoli sjesti	– take a seat, please; <i>izvoli</i> is the second person singular of the verb <i>izvoljeti</i> ; the form <i>izvoli</i> is used in addressing close friends or relatives.
hvala, dobro	– thank you, very well; thanks, fine
i	– and
ja	– I
umorna (f.)	– tired
jesi li umorna?	– are you tired?
umoran (m.)	– tired
jesi li umoran?	– are you tired?
vi	– you
nismo	– we are not

nismo umorni	– we are not tired
uzbuđeni smo	– we are excited
jer	– because
sutra	– tomorrow
putujemo	– we are travelling
jer sutra putujemo u Zagreb	– because we are travelling to Zagreb tomorrow
govorite li hrvatski?	– do you speak Croatian?
da, malo	– yes, a little
govorim malo hrvatski	– I speak a little Croatian
mnogo	– a lot
malo govorimo, mnogo učimo	– we speak a little, we learn (study) a lot
nisam	– I am not
uzbuđena (f.) sam	– I am excited
sutra putujemo u Zagreb	– we are travelling to Zagreb tomorrow
naš	– our

Conversational expressions

kako si (ti)?	– how are you?
izvoli sjesti	– take a seat, please
hvala, dobro	– thank you, very well; thanks, fine
jesi li (ti) umorna (f.)?	– are you tired?
jesi li (ti) umoran (m.)?	– are you tired?
nismo umorni	– we are not tired
uzbuđeni smo	– we are excited
govorite li hrvatski?	– do you speak Croatian?
da, malo	– yes, a little
govorim (m.) malo hrvatski	– I speak a little Croatian
nisam	– I am not
sutra putujemo u Zagreb	– we are travelling to Zagreb tomorrow

27

Grammatical explanation

1. Adjectives

Masculine

Jesi li umoran?	Are you tired?
Da, umoran sam.	Yes, I am tired.
Ne, nisam umoran.	No, I am not tired.

Feminine

Jesi li umorna?	Are you tired?
Da, umorna sam.	Yes, I am tired.
Ne, nisam umorna.	No, I am not tired.

Plural

Jeste li umorni?	Are you tired?
Da, umorni smo.	Yes, we are tired.
Ne, nismo umorni.	No, we are not tired.

2. The consonant *p*

The consonant *p* in Croatian is not quite the same as its corresponding sound *p* in English. It is not pronounced with the strong puff of breath (aspiration) often found in the English sound *p* (pot, part, pipe). It is therefore less emphatic.

Exercises:

prva (first)	lijepo (nice)
popiti (to drink)	plav (blue)
prijatelj (friend)	supruga (wife)

3. The consonant *m*

The consonant *m* (mama) in Croatian is similar to its corresponding sound *m* in English (man).

Exercises:

mama (mother)	malo (a little)
učimo (we are learning)	moj (my)
umoran (tired)	hvala vam (thank you)

4. The consonant *v*

The consonant *v* (prva) in Croatian is similar to its corresponding sound *v* in English (vast).

Exercises:

vježba (lesson)	izvolite (please)
vrlo (very)	već (already)
večer (evening)	govoriti (to speak)

5. The consonant *h*

The Croatian *h* is somewhat different from the English *h*. To pronounce this sound, the student should prepare his organs of speech for the pronunciation of the English sound *k* and then let the air »scrape« over the back of the tongue. The sound *h* is similar to its German equivalent in *ach* but it has much less force.

Exercises:

hrvatski (Croatian)	hotel (hotel)
Hrvatska (Croatia)	hvala vam (thank you)
Hrvat (Croat)	juha (soup)

6. The consonant *n*

The consonant *n* (dan) in Croatian is similar to its corresponding sound *n* in English (ton).

Exercises:

dan (day)	žena (woman)
noć (night)	učenica (pupil)
nešto (something)	student (student)

7. The consonant *s*

The consonant *s* (svaki) in Croatian is similar to its corresponding sound *s* in English (pass). It is always pronounced *s* (sir), and never *z* or *sh*.

Exercises:

svaki (every)	jeste li (are you)?
kako ste (how are you)?	izvršno (excellent)
sjesti (to sit down)	hrvatski (Croatian)

8. The consonant *l*

The consonant *l* (lijepa) is similar to its corresponding sound *l* (light) in English.

Exercises:

laku noć (good night) želite li (do you want)?
izvolite sjesti (take a seat, please) malo (a little)
jeste li (are you)? lijep (nice)

9. The consonant z

The consonant z (Zagreb) in Croatian is similar to its corresponding sound z (zip) in English.

Exercises:

Zagreb (Zagreb) zaista (really)
zima (winter) razgovarati (to talk)
dolazak (arrival) zato (therefore)

Exercises

30 Translation from Lesson 2: (I)

1. Dobar dan. Dobro jutro. Dobar večer. Laku noć.
2. Izvolite sjesti. Jeste li umorni?
3. Želite li cigaretu? Želite li nešto popiti?
4. Pa vi već govorite hrvatski.
5. Učimo hrvatski jezik.

4. vježba (Četvrta vježba)

DOLAZAK U ZÁGREB

- Stjepan:** Dòbro dòšli u Zágreb! Ja sam Stjèpan Kòvačić, a òvo je mòj prijatelj Ivan Jùranić.
- Joseph:** Ja sam Joseph Smith, a òvo je mòja žèna Mary.
- Mary:** Dràgo mi je. Òvo su John, Edward i Jane.
- John:** Ja sam John Smith, a ovo je mòj bràt Edward. Òvo je mòja sèstra Jane.
- Jane:** Ja sam učenica. John je stùdent. Edward je takò-der stùdent.
- Stjepan:** Òvo je hòtel »Esplanáde-Intercontinèntal«. Izvòlite ući.
- Mary:** Hvàla. Óvdje je vrlo lijèpo.
- Stjepan:** Jeste li umorni? Kàsno je.
- Mary:** Dà, umorni smo. Hvàla vam. Do vidénja sùtra.
- Svi:** Do vidénja. Láku noć.

Words and phrases

četvrta (f.)	- fourth
vježba (f.)	- lesson
dolazak (m.)	- arrival
u	- in
Zagreb	- Zagreb, capital of Croatia
dobro došli	- welcome
ja sam	- I am
a	- and
ovo je	- this is
moj (m.s.)	- my
prijatelj (m.)	- friend
moja (f.s.)	- my
žena (f.)	- wife
drago mi je	- I am glad
ovo su	- here are (literally: those are)
brat (m.)	- brother
sestra (f.)	- sister
učenica (f.)	- pupil
student (m.)	- student

također	- also, too
hotel (m.)	- hotel
izvolite ući	- please, come in
hvala	- thank you
ovdje	- here
ovdje je vrlo lijepo	- it is very nice here
jeste li umorni	- are you tired
kasno je	- it is late
hvala vam	- thank you
do viđenja sutra	- so long (till) to-morrow
laku noć	- good night

Conversational expressions

dobro došli	- welcome
drago mi je	- I am glad
izvolite ući	- please, come in
hvala; hvala vam	- thank you
kasno je	- it is late
ovdje je vrlo lijepo	- it is very nice here
do viđenja	- so long
laku noć	- good night

Grammatical explanation

1. The Present Tense of the verb *biti* (to be)

Affirmative

Short Form	Long Form	
Singular		Singular
ja sam	jesam	
ti si	jesi	
on je	jest	
ona je	jest	
ono je	jest	
Plural		Plural
mi smo	jesmo	
vi ste	jeste	
oni su	jesu	they are

Interrogative

Singular	Singular
jesam li (ja)?	am I?
jesi li (ti)?	are you?
je li (on)?	is he?
je li (ona)?	is she?
je li (ono)?	is it?
Plural	Plural
jesmo li (mi)?	are we?
jeste li (vi)?	are you?
jesu li (oni)?	are they?

Negative

Singular	Singular
(ja) nisam	I am not
(ti) nisi	you are not
(on) nije	he is not
(ona) nije	she is not
(ono) nije	it is not
Plural	Plural
(mi) nismo	we are not
(vi) niste	you are not
(oni) nisu	they are not

The verb *biti* (to be) has two forms of the Present Tense, a Long Form and a Short Form.

The Long Form is more emphatic. It is used:

(I) When the verb occurs as the first word of the sentence
e.g.

Jesam li (ja) student?	Am I a student?
Jeste li (vi) učenica?	Are you a pupil?
Jeste li (vi) umorni?	Are you tired?

(II) When the verb stands alone, usually in answer to a question e.g.

Jeste li student?	Are you a student?
Da, jesam.	Yes, I am.

Jeste li umorni? Are you tired?
Da, *jesmo*. Yes, we are.

The Short Form is used on all other occasions, especially in conversation.

2. Ti (thou, you) and vi (you)

Ti corresponds to the older English form *thou* or to the French form *tu*. It is used in addressing relatives, close friends, and children e.g.

Jane, jesi li (ti) učenica? Jane, are you a pupil?
John, jesi li (ti) umoran? John, are you tired?

Vi is the polite form of address e.g.

Jeste li (vi) umorni? Are you tired?

3. Nouns

34

Masculine nouns usually end in a consonant e.g.
dolazak, Zagreb, prijatelj, brat, student, hotel.
Feminine nouns usually end in - *a* e.g.
žena, sestra, učenica.

4. Absence of the Article

In Croatian there are no articles e.g.

On je student. He is a student.
Student je ovdje. The student is here.

5. Pronouns

moj (m.), moja (f.) – my

m a s c u l i n e		f e m i n i n e	
moj prijatelj (my friend)		moja žena (my wife)	
moj brat (my brother)		moja sestra (my sister)	
moj student (my student)		moja učenica (my pupil)	

6. The consonant *d*

The consonant *d* (takoder) is pronounced like the *dg* in *bridge*. More precisely, the consonant *d* is somewhere between the *dg* of *bridge* and *dew* of *dew*. To pronounce this sound, the student should lightly press the tip of the tongue against the lower teeth.

Exercises:

dak (pupil)	gospoda (lady, madam)
takoder (also)	rodak (relative)
do viđenja (so long)	predgrađe (suburb)

Exercises (Vježbe)

Read and translate:

(1)

Ja sam učenica. Jesam li ja učenica? Da, ja sam učenica. Ti si učenica. Jesi li ti student? Ne, nisam. Ona je učenica. Je li ona učenica? Da, ona je učenica. On je moj brat. Je li on moj brat? Da, on je moj brat. Mi smo umorni. Vi ste također umorni. Jeste li vi umorni? Ne, mi nismo umorni. John i Edward su umorni. Jesu li oni umorni? Da, oni su umorni. Jane nije umorna. Je li ona umorna? Ne, ona nije umorna. Stjepan i Ivan nisu umorni. Kasno je. Laku noć.

35

5. vježba (Peta vježba)

U HOTELU »ESPLANADE-INTERCONTINENTAL«

- Stjepan:** Dòbro jùtro.
Joseph: Dòbro jùtro. Izvòlite úci.
Stjepan: Ovo je mòja sùpruga Ana.
Joseph: Ovo je mòja sùpruga Mary.
Ana: Drágo mi je. Káko ste?
Mary: Drágo mi je. Vrlo dòbro. Ovdje je zaista lijépo. Íma-
mo dívnu sóbu. Sòba íma vèlik bàlkon.
Jane: Dòbro jùtro.
Mary: Ovò je mòja kí Jane.
Ana: Drágo mi je, Jane. I já ímam kécér. Òna je jòš
màlo díjéte. A ímam i sína.
Joseph: John i Edward jòš su u krèvetu. Òni su ùmorni.
Stjepan: A ješi li tí ùmorna, Jane?
Jane: Nè, já nísam ùmorna.
Konobar: Mòlim, dòručak je gòtov.
Jane: Mòlim vas, što ímamo za dòručak?
Konobar: Za dòručak íma bíjèla káva, krùh, màslac i džèm.
Svè je na stòlu.
Jane: Hvàla vam. Já sam glàdna.

Words and phrases

peta (f.)	- fifth
u hotelu	- in the hotel
dobro (n.s.)	- good
jutro (n.)	- morning
dobro jutro	- good morning
supruga (f.)	- wife
kako ste?	- how are you?
vrlo	- very
vrlo dobro	- very well
zaista	- really
ovdje je zaista	- it is really nice here
lijepo	

imamo	- we have
divna (f.s.)	- beautiful, gorgeous
soba (f.)	- room
velik (m.s.)	- large, big
balkon (m.)	- balcony
kći (f.)	- daughter, <i>kćer</i> is the Accusative of <i>kći</i>
jòš	- still
malo (n.s.)	- small
dijete (n.s.)	- child
ali	- but
i	- also, too, and
u krevetu	- in bed
umorna (f.s.)	- tired
konobar (m.)	- waiter
molim	- please
doručak (m.)	- breakfast
doručak je gòtov	- breakfast is ready
molim vas	- please
što	- what
što imamo za	
doručak?	- what have we got for breakfast
za doručak ima	- breakfast consists of
bijela (f.s.)	- white
kava (f.)	- coffee
krùh (m.)	- bread
maslac (m.)	- butter
džem (m.)	- jam
sve	- everything, all
stol (m.)	- table
na stolu	- on the table
gladna (f.s.)	- hungry

Conversational expressions

dobro jutro	- good morning
kako ste?	- how are you?
vrlo dobro	- very well
ovdje je zaista	- it is really very nice
vrlo lijepo	here
doručak je gotov	- breakfast is ready
molim; molim vas	- please
molimo vas, što	- what have we got
imamo za doručak	for breakfast, please?

1. The Present Tense of the verb *imati* (to have)

ima-ti	- the infinitive
-ti	- the ending of the infinitive
im-	- the present tense base

Affirmative

Singular (ja) imam (ti) imaš (on) ima (ona) ima (ono) ima	Singular I have you have he has she has it has
Plural (mi) imamo (vi) imate (oni) imaju	Plural we have you have they have

Interrogative

Singular imam li (ja)? imaš li (ti)? ima li (on)? ima li (ona)? ima li (ono)?	Singular have I? have you? has he? has she? has it?
Plural imamo li (mi)? imate li (vi)? imaju li (oni)?	Plural have we? have you? have they?

Negative

Singular (ja) nemam (ti) nemaš (on) nema (ona) nema (ono) nema	Singular I have not you have not he has not she has not it has not
Plural (mi) nemamo (vi) nemate (oni) nemaju	Plural we have not you have not they have not

2. Nouns

	Masculine		Feminine	Neuter
<i>Nom. sing.</i>	Inanimate	Animate		
<i>Acc. sing.</i>	balkon	sin	soba	dijete
	balkon	sina	sobu	dijete

The Accusative is usually used after transitive verbs followed by an object.

In the masculine singular the Accusative is as the Nominative if the noun is inanimate but has the ending - *a* (the ending of the Genitive) if the noun is animate e.g.

<i>Nom. sing.</i>	Soba ima balkon	The room has a balcony
<i>Acc. sing.</i>	Imamo sina.	We have a son.

In the feminine singular the Accusative is not like the Nominative e.g.

<i>Nom. sing.</i>	Ovo je divna soba.	This is a beautiful room.
<i>Acc. sing.</i>	Imamo divnu sobu.	We have a beautiful room

In the neuter singular the Accusative is like the Nominative e.g.

<i>Nom. sing.</i>	Ovo je dobro dijete.	This is a good child.
<i>Acc. sing.</i>	Imate dobro dijete.	You have a good child.

The feminine noun *kći* (daughter) is irregular. *Kćer* is the Accusative of *kći*.

3. Adjectives

dobar (m.), dobra (f.), dobro (n.) – good

masculine	feminine	neuter
umoran sin	umorna žena	umorno dijete
dobar brat	dobra kći	dobro jutro
Sin je umoran.	Žena je umorna.	Dijete je umorno.
Brat je dobar.	Kći je dobra.	Jutro je lijepo.

4. The conjunction *i* (and)

The conjunction *i* may mean (I) *and* and (II) *also, too* e.g.

- 40
- (I) Imamo sina i kćer. We have a son and a daughter.
 Brat i sestra su umorni. Brother and sister are tired.
- (II) Imam i sina. I have a son too.
 Ali imam i kćer. But I have also a daughter.
 But I have a daughter too.

5. The consonant *dž*

The consonant *dž* (džem) is a combination of the letters and sound *d* and *ž* and is pronounced like the *j* in English words *John*, *jug*, *jam* or *job*. The tip of the tongue should be pressed against the upper teeth.

Exercises:

džem	(jam)	bridž	(bridge)
džep	(pocket)	srdžba	(anger)
udžbenik	(text book)	džungla	(jungle)

Exercises (Vježbe)

Translate the following sentences.

(I)

It is very nice here. We have a beautiful room. The beautiful room has a balcony. I have a sister and Jane has a brother. I have a brother too. A nice breakfast is ready. You have tea or coffee for breakfast. They have a daughter Jane. And have you a daughter? No, I have not. I have a brother and a sister. Have you (thou) a book? Yes, I have a book.

(II)

She is still a small child. Edward and John are tired. Are they tired? Yes, they are tired. Jane is not tired. She is hungry. The child is hungry. Is the child hungry? Yes, it is hungry. The tired child is hungry. I am not hungry. Are you (thou) hungry? No, I am not hungry. Are you hungry? No, we are not hungry. We are tired.

Translation from Lesson 4:

(I)

I am a pupil. Am I a pupil? Yes, I am a pupil. You are a pupil. Are you a student? No, I am not. She is a pupil. Is she a pupil? Yes, she is a pupil. He is my brother. Is he my brother? Yes, he is my brother. We are tired. You are also tired. Are you tired? No, we are not tired. John and Edward are tired. Are they tired? Yes, they are tired. Jane is not tired. Is she tired? No, she is not tired. Stjepan and Ivan are not tired. It is late. Good night.

6. vježba (Šesta vježba)

DORUČAK

- Ana:** Ovo je blagovaonica hotela »Esplanade-Intercontinental«.
- Mary:** Blagovaonica je lijepa, udobna i svijetla. Ja volim svijetlost.
- Joseph:** A gdje su John, Edward i Jane?
- Mary:** Oni su u vrtu. Razgledaju vrt i veliku terasu.
- Jane:** Mama, tamo je krasan vrt. Terasa je puna cvijeća. I ovdje na stolu je cvijeće.
- Mary:** To su crveni karanfili.
- Edward:** Jane, ovo je lijepa slika. To je slika jelena.
- Stjepan:** Doručak je gotov. Izvolite sjesti.
- Joseph:** Hvala vam.
- Konobar:** Za doručak ima bijela kava ili mlijeko ili čaj.
- Jane:** Edvarde, voliš li bijelu kavu?
- Edward:** Da, volim bijelu kavu s komadićem kruha, maslacem i džemom. To je kontinentalni doručak.
- Joseph:** Edward, o čemu razgovarate?
- Edward:** Razgovaramo o doručku. Ja volim kontinentalni doručak, ali i engleski. Moji prijatelji iz Njemačke vole kontinentalni doručak.

Words and phrases

- šest (f.s.) – sixth
- blagovaonica (f.) – dining-room
- lijep (m.), – nice, beautiful
- lijepa (f.),
- lijepo (n.)
- udoban (m.), – comfortable, cosy
- udobna (f.),
- udobno (n.)
- svijetao (m.), – light, bright
- svijetla (f.),
- svijetlo (n.)
- voljeti – to like

- ja volim – I like
- svjetlost (f.) – light
- gdje – where
- gdje su? – where are?
- vrt (m.) – garden
- razgledati – to have a look around, inspect
- velik (m.), – big, large
- velika (f.),
- veliko (n.)
- terasa (f.) – terrace
- mama (f.) – mummy, mother
- tamo – there
- krasan (m.), – beautiful, handsome
- krasna (f.),
- krasno (n.)
- pun (m.), – full
- puna (f.),
- puno (n.)
- cvijeće (pl.) – flowers
- terasa je puna – the terrace is full of flowers
- cvijeća
- ovdje – here
- stol (m.) – table
- na stolu – on the table
- crven (m.), – red
- crvena (f.),
- crveno (n.),
- crveni (m.pl.)
- karanfil (m.) – carnation
- ovo je – this is
- slika (f.) – picture
- to je – it is
- jelen (m.) – deer, stag
- sjesti – to sit down, to take a seat
- izvolite sjesti – please do sit down
- bijeli (m.), – white
- bijela (f.),
- bijelo (n.)
- mlijeko (n.) – milk
- ili – or
- čaj (m.) – tea
- s, sa – with
- komadić (m.) – small piece
- to je – this is
- kontinentalni (m.),
- kontinentalna (f.),

kontinentalno (n.)	- continental
o	- about
razgovarati	- to talk
o čemu	- what are you talking about?
razgovarate?	
o doručku	- about breakfast; note that there is no <i>a</i> between <i>č</i> and <i>k</i>
engleski (m.), engleska (f.), englesko (n.)	- English
moji (m.pl.)	- my
iz	- from
Njemačka	- Germany
iz Njemačke	- from Germany

Conversational expressions

izvolite sjesti	- take a seat, please
o čemu razgovarate?	- what are you talking about?

Grammatical explanation

1. Declension of masculine nouns

Nouns in Croatian have seven cases in both singular and plural. They are as follows: Nominative, Genitive, Dative, Accusative, Vocative, Prepositional or Locative, Instrumental.

Nouns may be classified as *hard* or *soft* according to the last consonant of the stem. The noun is soft if the last consonant of the stem is soft. The soft consonants are: *c, ć, č, š, đ, dž, lj, nj, j*. All other consonants are hard.

S i n g u l a r	
Inanimate (hard)	Animate (hard)
N. karanfil	N. jelen
G. karanfil-a	G. jelen-a
D. karanfil-u	D. jelen-u
A. karanfil	A. jelen-a
V. karanfil-e	P. jelen-u
P. karanfil-u	V. jelen-e
I. karanfil-om	I. jelen-om

Inanimate (soft)	Animate (soft)
N. komadić	N. prijatelj
G. komadić-a	G. prijatelj-a
D. komadić-u	D. prijatelj-u
A. komadić	A. prijatelj-a
V. komadić-u	V. prijatelj-u
P. komadić-u	P. prijatelj-u
I. komadić-em	I. prijatelj-em

In the masculine singular the Accusative is as the Nominative if the noun is inanimate but as the Genitive if the noun is animate.

In the masculine singular the Vocative ends in *-e* if the stem ends in a hard consonant and in *-u* if the stem ends in a soft consonant.

In the masculine singular the Instrumental ends in *-om* if the stem ends in a hard consonant and in *-em* if the stem ends in a soft consonant.

P l u r a l

Inanimate	Animate
N. karanfil-i	N. jelen-i
G. karanfil-a	G. jelen-a
D. karanfil-ima	D. jelen-ima
A. karanfil-e	A. jelen-e
V. karanfil-i	V. jelen-i
P. karanfil-ima	P. jelen-ima
I. karanfil-ima	I. jelen-ima

Inanimate	Animate
N. komadić-i	N. prijatelj-i
G. komadić-a	G. prijatelj-a
D. komadić-ima	D. prijatelj-ima
A. komadić-e	A. prijatelj-e
V. komadić-i	V. prijatelj-i
P. komadić-ima	P. prijatelj-ima
I. komadić-ima	I. prijatelj-ima

The Genitive plural ending *-a* is always pronounced as a long vowel, thus distinguishing it from the *-a* ending of the Genitive singular.

2. The noun *cvijeće* (flowers)

The noun *cvijeće* is a collective noun. It is used only in the singular e.g.

Cvijeće je lijepo. The flowers are beautiful.
Cvijeće je na stolu. The flowers are on the table.

3. The Present Tense of the verb *voljeti* (to like)

voljeti – the infinitive
-ti – the ending of the infinitive
vol- – the Present Tense base

Affirmative

Singular		Singular	
(ja)	volim	I	like
(ti)	voliš	you	like
(on)	voli	he	likes
(ona)	voli	she	likes
(ono)	voli	it	likes
Plural		Plural	
(mi)	volimo	we	like
(vi)	volite	you	like
(oni)	vole	they	like

Interrogative

Singular		Singular	
volim li	(ja)?	do I	like?
voliš li	(ti)?	do you	like?
voli li	(on)?	does he	like?
voli li	(ona)?	does she	like?
voli li	(ono)?	does it	like?

Plural		Plural	
volimo li	(mi)?	do we	like?
volite li	(vi)?	do you	like?
vole li	(oni)?	do they	like?

Negative

Singular		Singular	
(ja)	ne volim	I do not	like
(ti)	ne voliš	you do not	like
(on)	ne voli	he does not	like
(ona)	ne voli	she does not	like
(ono)	ne voli	it does not	like
Plural		Plural	
(mi)	ne volimo	we do not	like
(vi)	ne volite	you do not	like
(oni)	ne vole	they do not	like

4. Adjectives

crven (masculine singular) – red
crveni (masculine plural) – red
Crveni karanfil je lijep.
Crveni karanfili su lijepi.
The red carnation is beautiful.
Red carnations are beautiful.

5. Pronouns

moj (masculine singular) – my
moji (masculine plural) – my
Moj je prijatelj iz Njemačke.
Moji su prijatelji iz Njemačke.
My friend is from Germany.
My friends are from Germany.

6. The consonant *nj*

The consonant *nj* is a palatalized or soft *n*. It is pronounced like the *ne* in the English word *news*. To pronounce this sound, the student should prepare his organs of speech for the pronunciation of the *y* in *year* and then pronounce *n*; or, he should press the front part of the tongue against the teeth ridge (the upper gum ridge) and then pronounce *n*; the result will be the sound *nj*.

Exercises:

Njemačka	(Germany)	trešnja	(cherry)
njegov	(his)	njihov	(their)
nošnja	(costume)	konj	(horse)

Exercises

Translation from Lesson 5:

(I)

48

Ovdje je vrlo lijepo. Imamo lijepu sobu. Lijepa soba ima balkon. Ja imam sestru, a Jane ima brata. I ja imam brata. Dobar doručak je gotov. Za doručak imate čaj ili kavu. Oni imaju kćer Jane. A imate li vi kćer? Ne, nemam. Ja imam brata i sestru. Imaš li knjigu? Da, ja imam knjigu.

(II)

Ona je još malo dijete. Edward i John su umorni. Jesu li oni umorni? Da, oni su umorni. Jane nije umorna. Ona je gladna. Dijete je gladno. Je li dijete gladno? Da, ono je gladno. Umorno dijete je gladno. Ja nisam gladan. Jesi li ti gladan? Ne, ja nisam gladan. Jeste li vi gladni? Ne, mi nismo gladni. Mi smo umorni.

7. vježba (Sédma vježba)

NA PÚTU DO „MÁTICE“

- Mary:** Kàko je vani lijépo i sùnčano! Kàko je òvdje súnce tòplo. Vòlim súnce i toplínu. I mòj múž vòli súnce i toplínu.
- Joseph:** Grád Zàgreb vrlo je čist. Nèki gràdovi nísu tàko čistí. Lòndon, na pòrimjer.
- Stjepan:** Zàto je to náš bijéli Zàgreb.
- John:** Gospòdine Kòvačiću, kàkav je òvo spòmenik?
- Stjepan:** To je spòmenik kràlja Tòmislava. Kràlj Tòmislav pìvi je hrvatski kràlj. Nasùprot spòmeniku je kòlodvor. Nèdaleko od kòlodvora je pòšta. To je nòva zgràda.
- Edward:** Tàta! Plàvi tràmvaj!
- Àna:** To je náš zàgrebački tràmvaj. Plàva bòja bòja je Zàgreba.
- Jane:** Tàta! Gòsposda s máčkom! A tkò je ònaj stàrac sa štápom na plòčniku?
- Joseph:** To je stàri gospòdin, a ne stàrac. Mnogi stàri ljùdi imaju štáp. Gòsposda s bijélim máčkom je Èngleskinja. Stàri gòspodin je Ènglez. Oni razgovàraju na èngleskom.

49

Words and phrases

sedma (f.)	- seventh
put (m.)	- way
na putu	- on the way
do	- to
Na putu do <i>Maticice</i>	- on the way to »Matica«; »Maticice« is the Genitive of »Matica« (f.); »Matica« is the shortened name of the association »Matica iseljenika Hrvatske« (The Association of emigrants from Croatia)
kako	- how
vani	- outside
lijepo	- nice

sunčano	- sunny
sunce	- sun
toplo	- warm
volim	- I like
toplina	- warmth
muž (m.)	- husband
grad (m.)	- town
čist (m.), čista (f.), čisto (n.)	- clean
neki	- some
tako	- so
na primjer	- for example, for instance
zato	- therefore
gospodin (m.)	- mister, sir (in address); gentleman
kakav	- what kind (sort) of
spomenik (m.)	- monument
kakav je ovo spomenik?	- what sort of a monument is this?
kralj (m.)	- king
Tomislav	- Tomislav, the name of the first Croatian king
prvi (m.), prva (f.), prvo (n.)	- first
hrvatski (m.), hrvatska (f.), hrvatsko (n.)	- Croatian
nasuprot	- opposite
kolodvor (m.)	- railway-station
nedaleko od	- not far off (away) from
pošta (f.)	- post-office
nov (m.), nova (f.), novo (n.)	- new
zgrada (f.)	- building
tata (m.)	- daddy, father
plav (m.), plava (f.), plavo (n.)	- blue; <i>plavi</i> is the definite form of <i>plav</i>
tramvaj (m.)	- tram, street-car
zagrebački (m.), zagrebačka (f.), zagrebačko (n.)	- Zagreb
zagrebački tramvaj	- Zagreb tram
boja (f.)	- colour
gospođa (f.)	- lady
mačak (m.)	- male cat, tom-cat
tko	- who

onaj	- that
starac (m.)	- old man
s, sa	- with
štap (m.)	- stick, walking-stick
pločnik (m.)	- pavement
star (m.), stara (f.), staro (n.)	- old; <i>stari</i> is the definite form of <i>star</i>
ne	- not
ljudi (pl.)	- people; <i>ljudi</i> is the irregular plural of <i>čovjek</i> (man)
Engleskinja (f.)	- Englishwoman, English lady
Englez	- Englishman
na engleskom	- in English
oni razgovaraju na engleskom	- they talk in English
vjerojatno	- probably

Conversational expressions

kakav je ovo spomenik	- what sort of a monument is this?
oni razgovaraju na engleskom	- they talk in English

Grammatical explanation

1. Plural of monosyllabic masculine nouns

Most monosyllabic masculine nouns form their plural by inserting the infix *-ov* or *-ev* between the noun and the plural ending *-i*. The infix *-ov* is added to hard stems and the infix *-ev* to soft stems (i.e. to stems ending in one of the following consonants: *c, ć, č, š, đ, dž, lj, nj, j*). Such nouns are declined regularly in the singular. Examples: grad (town), muž (husband), stol (table), štap (stick).

Singular

Hard	Soft
N. grad	N. muž
G. grad-a	G. muž-a
D. grad-u	D. muž-u

A. grad
V. grad-e
P. grad-u
I. grad-om

A. muž-a
V. muž-u
P. muž-u
I. muž-em

Plural

Hard
N. grad-ov-i
G. grad-ov-a
D. grad-ov-ima
A. grad-ov-e
V. grad-ov-i
P. grad-ov-ima
I. grad-ov-ima

Soft
N. muž-ev-i
G. muž-ev-a
D. muž-ev-ima
A. muž-ev-e
V. muž-ev-i
P. muž-ev-ima
I. muž-ev-ima

52

2. Mobile a

There are many words in Croatian which have the vowel *a* between the last two consonants, e.g.: starac, mačak. The vowel is inserted between the last two consonants so that such words can be pronounced easily. As this *a* appears only in some forms of the same word, it is called *mobile a*. It often occurs in the Nominative singular and the Genitive plural of some masculine nouns.

Singular
N. starac
G. starac-a
D. starc-u etc.

Plural
N. starc-i
G. starac-a
D. starc-ima etc.

8. vježba (Osmá vježba)

HŔVATSKA MÀTICA ISELJENÍKA

- Tájnik:** Dòbro dòšli u »Hŕvatsku màticu iseljeníka«. Dòbro dòšli u Zàgreb.
- Stjèpan:** Ovo je gòspodin Joseph Smith, a ovo je gòspoda Mary Smith.
- Tájnik:** Ja sam tájnik »Hŕvatske màtice iseljeníka«. Mòje je ime Pètar Márković. Izvòlite úci u mój úred.
- Joseph:** Ovo je mój sin John, a ovo je Edward. Ovo je mòja kći Jane.
- Tájnik:** Izvòlite sjèsti.
- Mary:** Ímate zàista lijèpu zgràdu. U zgràdi je pòsvuda cvijèće.
- Tájnik:** Tò je naša nòva zgràda. Kraj zgràde je nòva kòncertna dvòrana.
- John:** Zàgreb je vèlik mùzički cèntar. Dvòrana izgleda zanimljivo.
- Tájnik:** Žèlite li likéra, vèrmuta, ràkije? Ovo je pòznati liker »Maraschino«. Ràkija je hŕvatsko nàcionalno piće. Ovo je dòmaća ràkija, šljivovica. Izvòlite i crnu kàvu.
- Mary:** Jè li tó turska kàva?
- Tájnik:** Da, tó je turska kàva. A sàda: žívjeli!
- Svi:** Žívjeli!
- Tájnik:** I još jèdnom: dòbro dòšli u »Hŕvatsku màticu iseljeníka«! Dòbro dòšli u Zàgreb!

53

Words and phrases

- osma (f.) – eighth
- matica (f.) – queen bee, mother bee, hive, bee-hive – this is the literal translation of the word *matica*; in the name »Hŕvatska matica iseljeníka« the word *matica* is used as a metaphor and means: centre, core, pith
- iseljenik (m.) – emigrant
- hŕvatska (f.) – Croatia
- hŕvatski, a, o – Croatian

Hrvatska matica iseljenika	– Croatian Heritage Foundation
tajnik (m.)	– secretary
gospodin (m.)	– mister; sir (in address)
gospodin Joseph Smith	– Mr. Joseph Smith
gospoda (f.)	– lady; madam (in address)
gospoda Mary Smith	– Mrs. Mary Smith
ime (n.)	– name
ući	– to come in
izvolite ući	– please come in; will you please come in
u	– in
ured (m.)	– office
izvolite ući u moj ured	– will you please come into my office
posvuda	– everywhere, all over
naš (m.), naša (f.), naše (n.)	– our
pokraj	– beside, near
koncertni (m.), koncertna (f.), koncertno (n.)	– concert
dvorana (f.)	– hall
koncertna dvorana	– concert hall
muzički (m.), muzička (f.), muzičko (n.)	– musical
centar (m.)	– centre
izgledati	– to look
zanimljiv (m.), zanimljiva (f.), zanimljivo (n.)	– interesting
želite li likera?	– would you like a liqueur?
liker (m.)	– liqueur
vermut (m.)	– vermouth
rakija (f.)	– brandy
poznat (m.), poznata (f.), poznato (n.)	– well-known
nacionalan (m.), nacionalna (f.), nacionalno (n.)	– national
piće (n.)	– drink
domaći (m.), domaća (f.), domaće (n.)	– home-made

šljivovica (f.)	– plum-brandy
izvolite i crnu kavu	– please have some black coffee too
je li to?	– is this?
turski (m.), turska (f.), tursko (n.)	– Turkish
kava (f.)	– coffee
sada	– now
živjeli	– cheers
svi	– all
još jednom	– once more

Conversational expressions

izvolite ući	– please come in; will you please come in
želite li likera, vermuta, rakije?	– would you like a liqueur, a vermouth, a brandy?
je li to turska kava?	– is this Turkish coffee?
još jednom	– once more

Grammatical explanation

1. Declension of feminine nouns

Most feminine nouns end in *-a*. In this declension there is no distinction between hard and soft stems nor between animate and inanimate nouns. Examples: žena (woman), gospoda (lady), dvorana (hall), rakija (brandy), kava (coffee).

Singular	Plural
N. žena	N. žen-e
G. žen-e	G. žen-a
D. žen-i	D. žen-ama
A. žen-u	A. žen-e
V. žen-o	V. žen-e
P. žen-i	P. žen-ama
I. žen-om	I. žen-ama

2. Neuter nouns

Neuter nouns end in *-o* or *-e* e.g.

jutro (morning), mlijeko (milk), dijete (child),
ime (name), piće (drink)

3. The infinitive

The endings of the infinitive in Croatian are *-ti* or *-ći*.

The infinitive of most verbs ends in *-ti*.

The infinitives of the verbs we have learned so far run as follows: *bi-ti* (to be), *u-ći* (to come in), *ima-ti* (to have), *volje-ti* (to like), *razgleda-ti* (to have a look around), *sjes-ti* (to sit down), *razgovara-ti* (to talk), *izgleda-ti* (to look).

Exercises

56

Translate into Croatian:

(I)

1. Am I a secretary?
2. Are you (thou) a student?
3. Is he a king?
4. Is she an Englishwoman?
5. Is this a railway-station?
6. Are we animals?
7. Are you pupils?
8. Are they emigrants?

(II)

1. I have a son and daughter.
2. Have you (thou) a child?
3. The room has a terrace.
4. We do not have a secretary.
5. Have you a monument?
6. Have they a king?

(III)

1. We have brandy, liqueur, and vermouth.
2. I have a brother and sister.
3. He has a sister too.
4. But I have a brother and sister.

(IV)

1. The red carnation is beautiful.
2. Red carnations are beautiful.
3. Sister is tired.
4. The tired sister is in the garden.
5. The child is good.
6. The good child is in the garden.

Put into the plural:

(I)

1. Karanfil je lijep.
2. Voliš li prijatelja?
3. Imam komadić kruha.
4. Vrt je pun karanfila.
5. Moj je muž na putu.
6. Dijete razgleda vrt i terasu.
7. Ovo je naš stol.
8. Moj prijatelj iz Engleske voli kontinentalni doručak.

57

9. vježba (Deveta vježba)

RAZGOVOR U „MATICI“

Mary: Vrijeme je óvdje lijépo. Je li vrijeme u Hrvatskoj uvijek lijépo?

Stjepan: U Zágrebu vrijeme nije uvijek lijépo. Sada je óvdje sùnčano: kàtkada je óblačno, i kišovito. Zágreb ima kòntinentalnu klimu. Ali na Jádranu je vrijeme gòtovo uvijek sùnčano.

Mary: Súnce je prava ràdost. Djèca vòle móre i súnce. Mi svi uskoro ódlazimo na móre.

Joseph: Tàmo idemo pòsjetiti rodake. A želimo vidjeti i čitavu hrvatsku óbalu: Ístru, Hrvatsko primorje i Dàlmaciju.

Tájnik: Nàša je óbala glasòvita po ljepòti. Duž óbale sada imamo cèstu. To je nòva cèsta: Jádranska magistrála.

Mary: Nàši ròditelji gáje vèliku ljúbav prèma dòmovini. Oni cèsto pričaju o ljepòtama Hrvatske. A tùristi gòvore o Zàdru, Trògiru, Splitu, Dùbrovniku.

Joseph: Zàto želimo da mi, kao i nàši sinovi i kèeri, mnògo naučimo o Hrvatskoj.

John: Mí ùz to želimo dòbro naučiti hrvatski jèzik.

Tájnik: Ví vèc dòsta dòbro gòvorite hrvatski. Imam dár za vas. Tó je nàš jèzični tèčaj: Croatian Through Conversation.

Words and phrases

deveta (f.)	– ninth
razgovor (m.)	– talk, conversation
vrijeme (n.)	– weather
uvijek	– always
sada	– now
ali	– but
katkada	– sometimes
oblačno	– cloudy
kišovito	– rainy
klima (f.)	– climate

Jadran (m.)	– the Adriatic
gotovo	– almost
prav (m.), prava (f.), pravo (n.)	– real
radost (f.)	– happiness, joy
djeca (pl.)	– children
more (n.)	– sea
mi	– we
uskoro	– soon, in a short time
odlaziti (odlazim)	– to depart, to go away
na more	– to the sea-side
idemo	– we are going
posjetiti	– to visit
idemo posjetiti	– we are going to visit
rodak (m.)	– relative
željeti	– to want
želimo	– we want
vidjeti	– to see
želimo vidjeti	– we want to see
čitav (m.), čitava (f.), čitavo (n.)	– whole, entire, complete
obala (f.)	– coast, shore
Istra (f.)	– Istra, the peninsula on the Adriatic
Hrvatsko primorje (n.)	– Croatian Littoral, the northern part of the Croatian Coast
Dalmacija (f.)	– Dalmatia, the southern part of the Croatian coast
glasovit (m.), glasovita (f.), glasovito (n.)	– famous
po	– for
glasovita po	– famous for
naša je obala glasovita	– our coast is famous for (its) beauty
po ljepoti	– along
duž	– along the coast
uzduž obale	– road
cesta (f.)	– road
nov (m.), nova (f.), novo (n.)	– new
jadranski (m.), jadranska (f.), jadransko (n.)	– Adriatic

Jadranska magistrala (f.)	- main Adriatic road
roditelj	- parent
gajiti	- foster, nourish
veliki (m.), velika (f.), veliko (n.)	- great, big
ljubav (f.)	- love
prema	- towards
domovina (f.)	- homeland, native country, mother country, fatherland
prema domovini	- towards the homeland
često	- often
pričati	- to tell, to talk
ljepota (f.)	- beauty
turist (m.)	- tourist
govoriti	- to speak
govoriti o	- to speak about
Zadar (m.)	- Zadar, a town on the Croatian coast; note that there is a mo- bile <i>-a</i> in the Genitive singular (Zadra)
60 Trogir (m.)	- Trogir, a town on the Croatian coast
Split (m.)	- Split, a town on the Croatian coast
Dubrovnik (m.)	- Dubrovnik, a town on the Croatian coast
zato	- therefore
da	- that
kao i	- and
sin (m.)	- son
kćeri (pl.)	- daughters: <i>kćeri</i> is the plural of the noun <i>kći</i> (daughter)
mnogo	- a great deal of
naučiti	- to learn
uz	- besides, in addition
uz to	- besides this, in addition to this
dobro	- well
jezik (m.)	- language
već	- already
dosta	- fairly, rather
dosta dobro	- fairly well
dar (m.)	- present, gift
za	- for

za vas	- for you
jezični (m.), jezična (f.), jezično (n.)	- language
tečaj (m.)	- course

Conversational expressions

je li vrijeme u Hrvatskoj uvijek lijepo?	- is the weather in Croatia always fine?
--	---

naša je obala glaso- vita po ljepoti	- our coast is famous for (its) beauty
---	---

naši roditelji gaje veliku ljubav pre- ma domovini	- our parents have taught us to love (their) homeland; our parents foster great love towards (their) homeland (literal trans- lation)
--	---

želimo naučiti hrvatski jezik	- we want to learn the Croatian language
----------------------------------	---

vi već dosta dobro govorite hrvatski	- you speak Croatian fairly well already
---	---

Grammatical explanation

1. The Present Tense of the verb ići (to go)

ići	- the infinitive
id-	- the Present Tense base

Affirmative

Singular (ja) idem (ti) ideš (on) ide (ona) ide (ono) ide	Singular I go you go he goes she goes it goes
Plural (mi) idemo (vi) idete (oni) idu	Plural we go you go they go

Interrogative

Singular idem li (ja)? ideš li (ti)? ide li (on)? ide li (ona)? ide li (ono)?	Singular do I go? do you go? does he go? does she go? does it go?
Plural idemo li (mi)? idete li (vi)? idu li (oni)?	Plural do we go? do you go? do they go?

Negative

Singular (ja) ne idem (ti) ne ideš (on) ne ide (ona) ne ide (ono) ne ide	Singular I do not go you do not go he does not go she does not go it does not go
Plural (mi) ne idemo (vi) ne idete (oni) ne idu	Plural we do not go you do not go they do not go

2. Feminine nouns

Some feminine nouns end in *-a* e.g.
vježba (lesson), žena (woman), sestra (sister).
Some feminine nouns end in a consonant e.g.
radost (happiness), ljubav (love).

Exercises

Translation from Lesson 8:

(I)

1. Jesam li ja tajnik?
2. Jesi li ti student?
3. Je li on kralj?
4. Je li ona Engleskinja?
5. Je li ovo kolodvor?
6. Jesmo li životinje?
7. Jeste li vi učenici?
8. Jesu li oni iseljenici?

(II)

1. Imam sina i kćer.
2. Imaš li dijete?
3. Soba ima terasu.
4. Mi nemamo tajnika.
5. Imate li vi spomenik?
6. Imaju li oni kralja?

(III)

1. Imamo rakije, likera i vermuta.
2. Imam brata i sestru.
3. I on ima sestru.
4. Ali ja imam i brata i sestru.

(IV)

1. Crveni karanfil je lijep.
2. Crveni karanfili su lijepi.
3. Sestra je umorna.
4. Umorna je sestra u vrtu.
5. Dijete je dobro.
6. Dobro je dijete u vrtu.

The plural of sentences from Lesson 8:

(I)

1. Karanfili su lijepi.
2. Volite li prijatelje?
3. Imamo komadiće kruha.
4. Vrtovi su puni karanfila.
5. Naši su muževi na putu.
6. Djeca razgledaju vrtove i terase.
7. Ovo su naši stolovi.
8. Naši prijatelji iz Engleske vole kontinentalni doručak.

64

10. vježba (Dèseta vježba)

U AUTOMÒBILU

- Edward:** Īdemo li autobusom, tràmvajem ili vlàkom?
Stjèpan: Īdemo automòbilom.
Jane: Zàšto nè idemo pjèšice ili tràmvajem?
Joseph: Zàto što naši domàcini žive u prèdgrađu Zàgreba, a sàda je vèc kàsno.
Stjèpan: Izvòlite úci u mój àuto. A óndje je mój drúg Īvan. Ónaj plàvi àuto je njègov.
Jane: Edwarde! Jào! Štò rádiš? Mòja rúka! Mòja nòga!
Edward: Tvòja rúka i nòga sàda su u rédu. Glè, ÷ovjek i djèvojka! Īmaju fotògrafski apàrat.
John: ÷ovjek izgleda kào Amerikànac ili Ènglez. Tùristi često Īmaju fotògrafske aparàte.
Jane: Gospòdine Kòvačiću, kàkvo je òvo dīvo?
Stjèpan: Tò je òrah.
Jane: Hvála vam.
Edward: Jane, vidiš li žúto pòlje? Žúta pòlja vrlo su lijèpa i slikòvita.
Jane: Vídím. I u daljini vídím sèlo. A Īza sèla vèlike su gòre.
John: Vídite li tàmò, nàdesno, ÷ovjeka i žènu? Òni Īmaju národnu nòšnju.
Stjèpan: Tò su sèljak i sèljanka iz òkolice Zàgreba. A sàd smo vèc kòd kuće.

Words and phrases

deseta (f.)	- tenth
automobil (m.)	- car, automobile
u automobilu	- in the car
autobus (m.)	- bus
autobusom	- by bus
tramvajem	- by tram
vlak (m.)	- train
vlakom	- by train
automobilom	- by car

65

zašto	- why
zato što	- because
pješice	- on foot
domaćin (m.)	- host
živjeti	- to live
naši domaćini žive	- our hosts live
predgrađe (n.)	- suburbs, outskirts
auto (m.)	- car, <i>auto</i> is the shortened form of <i>automobil</i>
izvolite ući u moj auto	- will you get into my car please
ondje	- there
drug (m.)	- friend, colleague
onaj (m.), ona (f.), ono (n.)	- that
njegov (m.), njegova (f.), njegovo (n.)	- his
jao	- alas, woe
raditi	- to work
što radiš?	- what are you (thou) doing?
moj (m.), moja (f.), moje (n.)	- my
ruka (f.)	- hand
noga (f.), tvoj (m.), tvoja (f.), tvoje (n.)	- leg - your
u redu	- all right
gle	- look
čovjek (m.)	- man
djevojka (f.)	- girl
fotografski aparat (m.)	- camera
izgledati	- to look like
kao	- like, as
Amerikanac (m.)	- an American
Englez (m.)	- an Englishman
često	- often
ovaj (m.), ova (f.), ovo (n.)	- this
drvo (n.)	- tree
kakvo je ovo drvo?	- what sort of a tree is this?
orah (m.)	- walnut-tree; walnut
žut (m.), žuta (f.), žuto (n.)	- yellow

polje (n.)	- field
slikovit (m.), slikovita (f.), slikovito (n.)	- picturesque
daljina (f.)	- distance
u daljini	- in the distance
selo (n.)	- village
iza	- behind, at the back
iza sela	- behind the village, at the back of the village
gora (f.)	- mountain
tamo	- there
nadesno	- on the right
narodni (m.), narodna (f.), narodno (n.)	- national
nošnja (f.)	- costume
narodna nošnja (f.)	- national costume
seljak (m.)	- peasant
seljanka (f.)	- peasant-woman
iz	- from
okolica (f.)	- neighbourhood, surroundings
iz okolice Zagreba kod kuće	- from the neighbourhood of Zagreb - at home

Conversational expressions

autobusom	- by bus
tramvajem	- by tram
vlakom	- by train
automobilom	- by car
pješice	- on foot
u predgrađu	- in a suburb
izvolite ući u moj auto	- will you get into my car please
što radiš?	- what are you (thou) doing?
u redu	- all right
kakvo je ovo drvo?	- what sort of a tree is this?
u daljini	- in the distance
iza sela	- behind the village, at the back of the village

nadesno – on the right
 iz okolice Zagreba – from the neighbourhood of Zagreb
 kod kuće – at home

Grammatical explanation

1. Declension of neuter nouns

Neuter nouns end in *-o* (jutro, mlijeko), or *-e* (sunce, more). The declension of neuter nouns is similar to that of masculine nouns; they only differ in the endings for the Nominative, Accusative and Vocative.

Singular

Hard	Soft
N. selo	N. polje
G. sel-a	G. polj-a
D. sel-u	D. polj-u
A. selo	A. polje
V. selo	V. polje
P. sel-u	P. polj-u
I. sel-om	I. polj-em

In the neuter singular the Instrumental ends in *-om* if the stem ends in a hard consonant and in *-em* if the stem ends in a soft consonant.

Plural

Hard	Soft
N. sel-a	N. polj-a
G. sel-a	G. polj-a
D. sel-ima	D. polj-ima
A. sel-a	A. polj-a
V. sel-a	V. polj-a
P. sel-ima	P. polj-ima
I. sel-ima	I. polj-ima

2. Adjectives

N. sing.: lijep (m.), lijepa (f.), lijepo (n.) - nice, fine
 N. pl.: lijepi (m.), lijepe (f.), lijepa (n.) - nice, fine

Singular

Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
lijep čovjek	lijepa žena	lijepo dijete
Čovjek je lijep.	Žena je lijepa.	Dijete je lijepo.

Plural

Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
lijepi ljudi	lijepo žene	lijepa djeca
Ljudi su lijepi.	Žene su lijepe.	Djeca su lijepa.

3. Prepositions

The correct usage of the most commonly used prepositions is one of the greatest difficulties in learning a foreign language. Prepositions with their meanings, usage, and following case should be learned from the context. Today we are going to speak about the preposition *u*.

Preposition *u* (in, to, into)

Preposition *u* is most commonly used with the Accusative and Prepositional cases:

u with the Accusative:

U with the Accusative is used with verbs expressing movement when the construction of the sentence answers the question: *ka-mo?* E. g.: *Idem u hotel.*

Dobro došli **u** Zagreb.
 Dobro došli **u** »Hrvatsku
 maticu iseljenika«.
 Izvolite ući **u** moj ured.
 Izvolite ući **u** moj auto.

Welcome to Zagreb.
 Welcome to »Hrvatska
 matica iseljenika«.
 Please come into my office.
 Please get into my car.

u with the Prepositional:

U with the Prepositional is used when we want to denote the place in which the action expressed by the verb takes place. It is used when the construction of the sentence answers the question: *gdje?*
E. g.: Ja sam u hotelu.

U hotelu »Esplanade-Intercontinental« je lijepo.	It is very nice in the hotel »Esplanade-Intercontinental«.
John i Edward još su u krevetu.	John and Edward are still in bed.
On je u vrtu.	He is in the garden.
U zgradi je posvuda cvijeće.	There are flowers everywhere in the building.
Razgovor je u »Matica« zanimljiv.	The talk in »Matica« is interesting.
U automobilu je lijepo.	It is very nice in the car.
Dobra žena živi u predgrađu.	The good woman lives in a suburb.
U daljini su sela.	Villages are in the distance.

Exercises

70

Translate into Croatian:

(I)

1. People work in the fields.
2. Women talk about milk.
3. They live in the suburbs of Zagreb.
4. Children like the sun and the sea.
5. Brandy is our national drink.
6. Flowers on the table are very nice.
7. What are you doing in the tree?
8. Life in the village is nice.
9. The weather here is very nice.
10. We want to visit the Croatian Littoral.

(II)

1. The red balcony is picturesque.
2. Red balconies are picturesque.
3. The concert-hall is very interesting.
4. Concert-halls are very interesting.
5. The yellow field is large.
6. Yellow fields are large.

(III)

1. John, Edward and Jane are in the garden.
2. Please come into my office.

11. vježba (Jedanaesta vježba)

ÒBJED

- Svi:** Dòbar dán.
Àna: Dòbar dán. Dòbro dòšli ù moj dóm. Òvo je mòja svèkrva Dànica.
Dànica: Ja sam Dànica Kòvačić. Drágo mi je što su óvdje naši drági iseljeníci.
Joseph: I nàma je drágo što smo òpet u dómovini. Òvo su mòji sinovi John i Edward, a òvo je mòja kèi Jane.
Dànica: Tó su máli svjètski pútnici.
Stjepan: Òvo su mòji sinovi Jòsip, Ìvan i Àntun, a òvo je mòja kèi Màrija.
Mary: Tó su krásna djèca. Vídím, ìmate vrt pùn rúža. Kàko je lijép!
Dànica: Mòja snàha ùzgaja cvijéce. To je njézin hòbi.
Edward: Óno je òrah. Na stáblu su vèc mládi òrasi.
Àna: Izvòlite ù kuću. Stól je pròstrt.
Edward: Jane! Ìvane! Àntune!
Mary: Štò je Edwarde? Blijéd si kao křpa.
Edward: Májko! Bòrba pijétlova! Tàmo, na dvòrištu! Vídíš li křv na pijétlovoj nòzi?
John: Èno súsjede. Ìma štáp u rúci. Tó je kráj bòrbe.
Stjepan: Pijétlovi, tó su pràvi ràtnici! A sàda ìdemo na òbjed. Žèno, štò ìma za òbjed?
Àna: Za òbjed ìma pileća júha, pòhani pìlići, mládi krùmpir, rizòto, salàta, kòlaç i vòce.
Mary: Mój súprug vòli pòhane pìlice. Tó je òdlično jèlo.
Stjepan: Dòbar ték. Živjeli naši drági gòsti!
Svi: Dòbar ték.
Stjepan: Izvòlite vína. Òvo je kùtjevački burgúndac, a òvo je dalmàtinski òingaç.
Mary: Kòlaç je vrlo ùkusan.
Àna: Tó je savijaça od trèšanja. A sàda dólazi cřna kàva.

71

Words and phrases

72	<p>jedanaesta (f.) – eleventh objed (m.) – lunch dobar (m.), – good dobra (f.), dobro (n.)</p> <p>dan – day dobar dan – good day (literal translation) dom (m.) – home svekrva (f.) – mother-in-law što – that drag (m.), – dear, glad draga (f.), drago (n.)</p> <p>i nama je drago – we are glad too opet – again mali – little svjetski (m.), – world svjetska (f.), svjetsko (n.)</p> <p>putnik (m.) – traveller, voyager svjetski putnik – world traveller krasan (m.), – beautiful, nice krasna (f.), krasno (n.)</p> <p>kako je lijep – how nice it is snaha (f.) – daughter-in-law uzgajati – raise, grow njezin (m.), – her njezina (f.), njezino (n.)</p> <p>hobi (m.) – hobby orah (m.) – walnut orahovo stablo (n.) – walnut-tree mlad (m.), – young mlada (f.), mlado (n.)</p> <p>kuća (f.) – house izvolite u kuću – please come into the house stol je prostrt – the table is laid blijed (m.), – pale blijeda (f.), blijedo (n.)</p> <p>kao – like, as</p>
----	---

<p>krpa (f.) – rag blijed kao krpa – pale as death majka (f.) – mother borba (f.) – fight pijetao (m.) – cock; the plural of the noun <i>pijetao is pijetlovi</i> borba pijetlova – a cock-fight dvorište (n.) – yard krv (f.) – blood eno – look, there, see, see there susjeda (f.) – female neighbour kraj (m.) – end to je kraj borbe – that's the end of the fight prav (m.), – real prava (f.), pravo (n.)</p> <p>ratnik (m.) – warrior što ima za objed? – what have we got for lunch? pileći (m.), – chicken pileća (f.), pileće (n.)</p> <p>juha (f.) – soup pileća juha (f.) – chicken soup pohan (m.), – fried pohana (f.), pohano (n.)</p> <p>pilići (pl.) – chicken pohani pilići – deep-fried spring-chicken krumpir (m.) – potato rizoto (m.) – rissoto salata (f.) – salad kolač (m.) – cake voće (pl.) – fruit suprug (m.) – husband odličan (m.), – excellent odlična (f.), odlično (n.)</p> <p>jelo (n.) – dish dobar tek – good appetite vino (n.) – wine izvolite vina – please have some wine kutjevački (m.), – from Kutjevo kutjevačka (f.), kutjevačko (n.)</p>	73
---	----

kutjevački	
burgundac	– the name of a red or white wine
dalmatinski (m.),	– Dalmatian, from Dalmatia
dalmatinska (f.),	
dalmatinsko (n.)	
dalmatinski	– the name of a red wine
dingač	
ukusan (m.),	– tasty, tasteful
ukusna (f.),	
ukusno (n.)	
kolač je vrlo ukusan	– the cake is very tasty
savijača (f.)	– kind of pastry made of rolled out paste filled with fruit; strudel
trešnja (f.)	– cherry; <i>trešanja</i> is the Genitive plural of the noun <i>trešnja</i>
dolaziti	– to come

Conversational expressions

dobar dan	– good day
i nama je drago	– we are glad too
kako je lijep	– how nice it is
izvolite u kuću	– please come into the house
stol je prostrt	– the table is laid
što ima za objed?	– what have we got for lunch?
dobar tek	– good appetite
izvolite vina	– please have some wine
kolač je vrlo ukusan	– the cake is very tasty
blijed kao krpa	– pale like death

Grammatical explanation

1. Consonantal changes

A. The change of *k, g, h* into *č, ž, š*

Consonants *k, g, h* change to *č, ž, š* in front of *-e*. This rule is not always valid.

Such changes occur in the Vocative singular of masculine nouns. Examples: *čovjek* (man), *drug* (colleague), *duh* (ghost).

N. sing.	čovjek	drug	duh
V. sing.	čovječ-e	druž-e	duš-e

Other examples: *spomenik* (*spomeniče*), *iseljenik* (*iseljeniče*), *tajnik* (*tajniče*), *jezik* (*jeziče*), *seljak* (*seljače*), *putnik* (*putniče*), *ratnik* (*ratniče*); *suprug* (*supruže*).

B. The change of *k, g, h* into *č, ž, š*, or *c, z, s*

Consonants *k, g, h*, change to *c, z, s*, in front of *-i*. Such changes occur:

- (I) throughout the plural declension of masculine nouns except for the masculine Genitive and the Accusative. Examples: *ratnik* (warrior), *suprug* (husband), *orah* (walnut).

Plural

N. ratnic-i	supruz-i	oras-i
G. ratnik-a	suprug-a	orah-a
D. ratnic-ima	supruz-ima	oras-ima
A. ratnik-e	suprug-e	orah-e
V. ratnic-i	supruz-i	oras-i
P. ratnic-ima	supruz-ima	oras-ima
I. ratnic-ima	supruz-ima	oras-ima

Other examples: *spomenik* (*spomenici*), *iseljenik* (*iseljenici*), *tajnik* (*tajnici*), *jezik* (*jezici*), *seljak* (*seljaci*), *putnik* (*putnici*); *drug* (*druzi*); *duh* (*dusi*).

- (II) in the Dative and Prepositional singular of most feminine nouns. Examples: *ruka* (hand), *noga* (leg), *snaha* (sister-in-law).

Nom. sing.	ruka	noga	snaha
Dat. sing.	ruc-i	noz-i	snas-i
Prep. sing.	ruc-i	noz-i	snas-i

Other examples: *djevojka* (*djevojci*); *majka* (*majci*); *supruga* (*supruzi*); *juha* (*juši*).

2. Mobile *a*

Mobile *a* often appears in the Nominative singular and the Genitive plural of some masculine nouns, e.g.: *starac*, *starci*, *staraca*. It also occurs in some adjectives.

Examples: udoban, udobna, udobno; svijetao, svijetla, svijetlo; krasan, krasna, krasno; nacionalan, nacionalna, nacionalno; narodni, narodna, narodno; dobar, dobra, dobro; odličan, odlična, odlično; ukusan, ukusna, ukusno.

Prepositions (continued)

Preposition *na* (on, for, in)

The preposition *na* is used with the Accusative and Prepositional cases:

na with the Accusative:

A sad idemo na objed

And now we are going to lunch.

na with the Prepositional:

Sve je na stolu.

Everything is on the table.

Na putu do »Matice« vrlo je zanimljivo

It is very interesting on the way to »Matica« (literal translation).

A tko je onaj starac sa štapićem na pločniku?

And who is that old man with the walking stick on the pavement?

Oni razgovaraju na engleskom. Vrijeme na Jadranu je sunčano

They talk in English. On the Adriatic the weather is sunny.

Kuće su nadesno. Na stablu su orasi.

Houses are on the right. Walnuts are in the tree.

Pijetao je na dvorištu.

The cock is in the yard.

Vidiš li krv na pijetlovoj nozi?

Do you see blood on the cock's leg?

Exercises

Translation from Lesson 10:

(I)

1. Ljudi rade na poljima.
2. Žene pričaju o mlijeku.
3. Oni žive u predgrađu Zagreba.
4. Djeca vole sunce i more.
5. Rakija je naše narodno piće.
6. Cvijeće na stolu izgleda vrlo lijepo.
7. Što radiš na drvu?

8. Život na selu je lijep.
9. Ovdje imamo lijepo vrijeme.
10. Želimo posjetiti Hrvatsko primorje.

(II)

1. Crveni je balkon slikovit.
2. Crveni su balkoni slikoviti.
3. Koncertna je dvorana zanimljiva.
4. Koncertne su dvorane zanimljive.
5. Žuto je polje veliko.
6. Žuta su polja velika.

(III)

1. John, Edward i Jane su u vrtu.
2. Izvolite ući u moj ured.

U PRODAVAONICI GRAMOFONSKIH PLOČA

- Jòsip:** Īdemo kupovati gramofonske ploče.
Stjèpan: Īdete li autom?
Jòsip: Dà, dōsta je kàsno.
Svi: Do viđenja.
Jòsip: Ōvo je Trg bana Jelačića.
Edward: Jè li to vaš glávni trg?
Jòsip: Dà, tó je naš glávni trg; malo dalje je prodavaonica gramofonskih ploča.
Jòsip: Dobar večer. Īmate li hrvatske narodne pjesme?
Prodavāčica: Īmamo. Ōvo su ploče s pjesmama iz Slavonije i Dalmacije. Īmamo i ploču »Hrvatsko zagorje u pjesmi«. Vólite li šlágere? Ōvo je ploča šlágera »Zagreb 65«.
Jane: Za mōje prijateljice kupujem pjesme i plésove iz Slavonije, a za djèda dalmatinske pjesme. Mój je djèd iz Dalmacije, a mōja bāka iz okolice Samobora. Īmate li samoborske pjesme?
Prodavāčica: Īmamo. A odakle si tí, djevojčice?
Jane: Já sam iz Amèrike.
Prodavāčica: Tí si ónda prāvi svjètski pútnik.
Jane: Dà, ja često pútujem. A uskoro pútujem od Zāgreba do Splita.
Kupac: Tkò su tí strānci?
Jòsip: Tó su naši iseljenici. Njihovi su rōditelji Hrvāti kao i naši.
Edward: Mōji prijatelji vôle šlágere. Mòlim ploču »Zagreb 65«.
John: Koliko tó svè kōšta, mòlim?
Prodavāčica: Izvólite račun.
Jòhn: Ploče su vrlo jèftine. Hvála vam. Do viđenja.
Svi: Do viđenja.
Jòsip: Īdemo nešto pōpiti. Žédan sam, a ì vi ste sigurno žédni. Štò pijete?
John: Mì vólimo limunādu s lèdom. Jáko je vrúce.
Īvan: I já vòlim limunādu kād je vrúce.
Jòsip: Nēmamo mnōgo vrēmèna. Rōditelji nas čekaju.

- dvanaesta (f.) – twelfth
 prodavaonica (f.) – shop
 kupovati – to buy
 gramofonski (m.), gramofonska (f.), gramofonsko (n.) – gramophone
 ploča (f.) – record, gramophone record
 dosta je kasno – it is rather late
 do viđenja – so long
 trg (m.) – square
 republika (f.) – republic
 Trg bana Jelačića – Ban Jelačić's Square
 je li to? – is this?
 vaš (m.), vaša (f.), vaše (n.) – your
 glavni (m.), glavna (f.), glavno (n.) – main
 malo – little, a little
 dalje – further, further on
 malo dalje – a little further on
 dobar večer – good evening
 pjesma (f.) – song
 ples (m.) – dance
 Slavonija (f.) – Slavonia, the eastern part of Croatia
 Hrvatsko zagorje – Croatian Zagorje, part of northern Croatia
 šlager (m.) – pop-song
 za – for
 prijateljica (f.) – girl friend
 djed (m.) – grandfather
 dalmatinski (m.), dalmatinska (f.), dalmatinsko (n.) – Dalmatian
 baka (f.) – grandmother
 Samobor – a town near Zagreb
 samoborski (m.), samoborska (f.), samoborsko (n.) – Samobor (adjective), from Samobor
 odakle – where from
 odakle si (ti)? – where do you come from?
 djevojčica (f.) – little girl

onda	- then
često	- often
putovati	- to travel
uskoro	- soon
od	- from
do	- till, to
kupac (m.)	- buyer
tko	- who
stranac (m.)	- foreigner
njihov (m.), njihova (f.), njihovo (n.)	- their
Hrvat (m.)	- a Croat
kao i	- like
koliko	- how much
koštati	- to cost
koliko to sve košta?	- how much does all that cost, what is the price of all that?
račun (m.)	- bill
izvolite račun	- take the bill, please
jeftin (m.), jeftina (f.), jeftino (n.)	- cheap
nešto	- something
popiti	- to drink (up)
idemo nešto popiti	- let's have something to drink; let's have a drink
žedan (m.), žedna (f.), žedno (n.)	- thirsty
žedan sam	- I am thirsty
piti	- to drink
što pijete?	- what do you drink?
limunada (f.)	- lemonade
led (m.)	- ice
vruće	- hot
jako je vruće	- it is very hot
kad	- when
kad je vruće	- when it is hot
mnogo	- much, a lot of
vrijeme (n.)	- time; <i>vremena</i> is the Genitive of the noun <i>vrijeme</i>
nemamo mnogo vremena	- we do not have much time

nas	- us
čekati	- to wait
roditelji nas čekaju	- our parents are waiting for us

Conversational expressions

dosta je kasno	- it is rather late
do viđenja	- so long
malo dalje	- a little further on
dobar večer	- good evening
odakle si	- where do you (thou) come from
koliko to sve košta?	- what is the price of all that?
izvolite račun	- take the bill, please
idemo nešto popiti	- let's have something to drink
žedan sam	- I am thirsty
što pijete?	- what do you drink?
jako je vruće	- it is very hot
nemamo mnogo vremena	- we do not have much time

1. The Present Tense of the verb *kupovati* (to buy)

kupova - ti	- the infinitive
- ti	- the ending of the infinitive
kupu-	- the Present Tense base

Grammatical explanation

Affirmative

Singular	Singular
(ja) kupujem	I buy
(ti) kupuješ	you buy
(on) kupuje	he buys
(ona) kupuje	she buys
(ono) kupuje	it buys
Plural	Plural
(mi) kupujemo	we buy
(vi) kupujete	you buy
(oni) kupuju	they buy

Interrogative

Singular kupujem li (ja)? kupuješ li (ti)? kupuje li (on)? kupuje li (ona)? kupuje li (ono)?	Singular do I buy? do you buy? does he buy? does she buy? does it buy?
Plural kupujemo li (mi)? kupujete li (vi)? kupuju li (oni)?	Plural do we buy? do you buy? do they buy?

Negative

Singular (ja) ne kupujem (ti) ne kupuješ (on) ne kupuje (ona) ne kupuje (ono) ne kupuje	Singular I do not buy you do not buy he does not buy she does not buy it does not buy
Plural (mi) ne kupujemo (vi) ne kupujete (oni) ne kupuju	Plural we do not buy you do not buy they do not buy

Sing.	moj (m.),	moja (f.),	moje (n.) - my
Pl.	moji (m.),	moje (f.),	moja (n.) - my

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Sing.	moj sin	moja kći	moje dijete
Pl.	moji sinovi	moje kćeri	moja djeca
Sing.	Sin je moj.	Kći je moja.	Dijete je moje.
Pl.	Sinovi su moji.	Kćeri su moje.	Djeca su moja.

Other possessive pronouns that have occurred in the texts:
tvoj, a, e (your), njegov, a, o (his), njezin, a, o (her), naš, a, e (our),
vaš, a, e (your), njihov, a, o (their).

3. Prepositions (continued)

Preposition o (about)

Preposition *o* is used with the Prepositional.

o with the prepositional.

Razgovaramo o doručku.	We are talking about breakfast.
Oni često pričaju o ljepotama Hrvatske.	They often tell us about the beauties of Croatia.
Turisti govore o Dubrovniku.	Tourists talk about Dubrovnik.
Želimo naučiti mnogo o Hrvatskoj.	We want to learn a lot about Croatia.

Exercises.

Translate into Croatian:

(I)

- Are you (thou) buying this record?
- Yes, I am buying this record.
- Is she travelling from London to Zagreb?
- Yes, she is travelling from London to Zagreb.
- Does he drink wine?
- No, he does not drink wine.
- Are you travelling to Samobor?
- Yes, we are travelling to Samobor.
- Are they going to Dalmatia?
- Yes, they are going to Dalmatia.

(II)

- My friend is travelling from London to Zagreb.
- Your sister is having a look around the garden.
- His child does not like to drink milk.
- Her daughter-in-law works in the garden.
- Our village is large.

6. Our parents want to see the Croatian Coast.
7. Your sisters do not like lemonade.
8. Her pupils (girl pupils) are talking about the sea.
9. Our children are talking about the beauties of Croatia.
10. Their parents live in Samobor.
11. Their children are travelling to London.

(III)

1. This walking-stick is mine.
2. That rose is yours (thine).
3. That car is his.
4. This child is hers.
5. These cakes are ours.
6. Those houses are yours.
7. These children are theirs.

(IV)

1. I want to learn a lot about the town of Zagreb.
2. They are talking about Split.

13. vježba (Trinaesta vježba)

U BANCÍ

- Jane:** Kolíko ljudi čeka u rédu!
Joseph: Kolíko?
Jane: Jedan, dva, trí, četiri, pét, šest, sedam, osam, devet, deset. Deset.
Joseph: Tó nije mnògo.
Jane: Jè li téško mijénjati novac?
Joseph: Níje. Sád smo mí na rédu. Dòbro jùtro. Mògu li promijéniti stó dòlara?
Činòvnik: Dòbro jùtro. Mòžete. Jesu li to amèrički dòlari?
Joseph: Dà, amèrički.
Činòvnik: Váše íme?
Joseph: Joseph Smith.
Činòvnik: U rédu. Èvo pétsto deset kúna.
Joseph: Hvála vam. Do vídénja.
Jane: Tàta, mògu li ja promijéniti nèkoliko dòlara? Žèlim nèšto kúpiti.
Joseph: Mòžeš. Mí ćemo te óvdje čekati.

Words and phrases

trinaesta (f.)	- thirteenth
banka (f.)	- bank
u banci	- in the bank
koliko	- how many, how much
čekati (čekam)	- to queue, to stand in a line
red (m.)	- queue
u redu	- in a queue, in a line
čekati u redu	- to wait in a queue, to stand in a line
jedan	- one
два	- two
tri	- three

četiri	- four
pet	- five
šest	- six
sedam	- seven
osam	- eight
devet	- nine
deset	- ten
teško	- difficult
mijenjati (mijenjam)	- to change
novac (m.)	- money
red (m.)	- turn
sad smo mi na redu	- it is our turn now
promijeniti (promijenim)	- to change
sto	- a hundred
dolar (m.)	- dollar
mogu li promijeniti sto dolara?	- can I change a hundred dollars?
činovnik (m.)	- official, clerk, government clerk, public servant
američki (m.), američka (f.), američko (n.)	- American
tisuća (f.)	- a thousand
petsto	- five hundred
dinar (m.)	- dinar
nekoliko	- a few, some
mi te ovdje čekamo	- we will wait for you here; we are waiting for you here (lit- eral translation)

Conversational expressions

u banci	- in the bank
čekati u redu	- to wait in a queue, to stand in a line
sad smo mi na redu	- it is our turn now
mogu li promijeniti sto dolara?	- can I change a hundred dollars?
mi ćemo te čekati	- we will wait for you

Grammatical explanation

1. The Present Tense of the verb »moći« (to be able)

mo-ći - the infinitive
-ći - the ending of the infinitive
mog- - the Present Tense base

Affirmative

Singular (ja) mogu (ti) možeš (on) može (ona) može (ono) može	Singular I can you can he can she can it can
Plural (mi) možemo (vi) možete (oni) mogu	Plural we can you can they can

Interrogative

Singular mogu li (ja)? možeš li (ti)? može li (on)? može li (ona)? može li (ono)?	Singular can I? can you? can he? can she? can it?
Plural možemo li (mi)? možete li (vi)? mogu li (oni)?	Plural can we? can you? can they?

Negative

<p style="text-align: center;">Singular</p> <p>(ja) ne mogu (ti) ne možeš (on) ne može (ona) ne može (ono) ne može</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">Singular</p> <p>I cannot you cannot he cannot she cannot it cannot</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">Plural</p> <p>(mi) ne možemo (vi) ne možete (oni) ne mogu</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">Plural</p> <p>we cannot you cannot they cannot</p>

Note the change of *g* into *ž* before *e* in the above forms of the verb *moći* (to be able).

The verb *moći* (to be able) forms the Present Tense in a slightly different way from the verbs listed under the following heading.

88

2. Verbs (repetition)

Some forms in Croatian are derived from the infinitive base, others from the present tense base.

The infinitive base is formed by dropping the endings of the infinitive, i.e. *-ti* and *-ći*.

Sometimes the infinitive and the present tense base have the same form. It is therefore necessary that both infinitive and present tense bases are learned. From now on beside the infinitive we shall give the first person singular in the vocabulary list at the end of each lesson.

The Present Tense is formed by dropping the endings of the Present Tense: *-am*, *-im*, *-em*, *-jem*.

The Present Tense is formed by the addition of the following endings to the present tense base:

I	II	III	IV
-am	-im	-em	-jem
-aš	-iš	-eš	-ješ
-a	-i	-e	-je
-amo	-imo	-emo	-jemo
-ate	-ite	-ete	-jete
-aju	-e	-u	-ju

The following verbs have so far occurred in the texts:

biti (to be), ući (to come in), imati (to have), voljeti (to like), razgledati (to have a look around), sjesti (to sit down), razgovarati (to talk), izgledati (to look), izvoljeti (to have something), živjeti (to live), ići (to go), posjetiti (to visit), željeti (to want), vidjeti (to see), gajiti (to foster), pričati (to talk), govoriti (to speak), naučiti (to learn), raditi (to work), uzgajati (to raise, to grow), dolaziti (to come), kupovati (to buy), plesati (to dance), putovati (to travel), koštati (to cost), popiti (to drink up), piti (to drink), čekati (to wait), mijenjati (to change), promijeniti (to change).

The following verbs form their Present Tense like the verb *imati* (to have), i.e. by the endings *-am*, *-aš*, *-a*, *-amo*, *-ate*, *-aju*:

imati (imam), razgledati (razgledam), razgovarati (razgovaram), izgledati (izgledam), pričati (pričam), uzgajati (uzgajam), koštati (koštam), čekati (čekam), mijenjati (mijenjam).

The following verbs form their Present Tense like the verb *voljeti* (to like), i.e. by the endings *-im*, *-iš*, *-i*, *-imo*, *-ite*, *-e*:

voljeti (volim), izvoljeti (izvolim), živjeti (živim), posjetiti (posjetim), željeti (želim), vidjeti (vidim), gajiti (gajim), govoriti (govorim), naučiti (naučim), raditi (radim), dolaziti (dolazim), promijeniti (promijenim).

The following verbs form their Present Tense like the verb *ići* (to go), i.e. by the endings *-em*, *-eš*, *-e*, *-emo*, *ete*, *-u*.

ići (idem), ući (ud + jem → uđem), plesati (ples + jem → plešem).

The following verbs form their Present Tense like the verb *kupovati* (to buy), i.e. by the endings *-jem*, *-ješ*, *-je*, *-jemo*, *-jete*, *-ju*.

kupovati (kupujem), putovati (putujem), popiti (popijem), piti (pijem).

89

Translation from Lesson 12:

(I)

1. Kupuješ li ovu ploču?
2. Da, ja kupujem ovu ploču.
3. Putuje li ona od Londona do Zagreba?
4. Da, ona putuje od Londona do Zagreba.
5. Pije li on vino?
6. Ne, on ne pije vino.
7. Putujete li u Samobor?
8. Da, mi putujemo u Samobor.
9. Idu li oni u Dalmaciju?
10. Da, oni idu u Dalmaciju.

(II)

1. Moj prijatelj putuje od Londona do Zagreba.
2. Tvoja sestra razgleda vrt.
3. Njegovo dijete ne voli piti mlijeko.
4. Njezina snaha radi u vrtu.
5. Naše je selo veliko.
6. Naši roditelji žele vidjeti hrvatsku obalu.
7. Vaše sestre ne vole limunadu.
8. Njezine učenice razgovaraju o moru.
9. Njegova djeca ne vole raditi.
10. Naša djeca govore o ljepotama Hrvatske.
11. Njihovi roditelji žive u Samoboru.
12. Njihova djeca putuju u London.

(III)

1. Ovaj je štap moj.
2. Ona je ruža tvoja.
3. Onaj je auto njegov.
4. Ovo je dijete njezino.
5. Ovi su kolači naši.
6. One su kuće vaše.
7. Ova su djeca njihova.

(IV)

1. Želim mnogo naučiti o gradu Zagrebu.
2. Oni razgovaraju o Splitu.

14. vježba (Četrnaesta vježba)

U »SAMOBÓRCU«

Joseph: Danas idemo u Samobor. Tamo živi moja majka, a vaša baka. U Samoboru se dvog tjedna održava iseljenički piknik.

John: Idemo li vlakom, autobusom ili automobilima?

Joseph: Idemo automobilima.

Josip: Možemo li John, Edvard, Jane, Ivan, Antun, Marija i ja ići »Samoborcem«?

Mary: To je zaista dobra ideja! Zar stari, romantični »Samoborec« još vozi? Ali gdje su Edvard i Jane?

Josip: Edward se oblači, a Jane se još umiva.

Ana: Já sam već gotova. A što je to »Samoborec«?

Jane: »Samoborec« je popularni naziv za željeznicu koja vozi između Zagreba i Samobora. Ljudi je zovu »péglica«.

Jane: To je divno! Idemo odmah na kolodvor. Do vidjenja.

Josip: Ovo je novi samoborski kolodvor, a ono tamo je »Samoborec«.

Jane: Taj vlak nije star, nego je nov i lijep. I kako je udoban!

Josip: Zove se i »Srèbrna strijéla«.
Svake sùbote i nédjelje óna vozi izletnike i planinare u Samobor.

Jane: Šad smo na móstu, a ispòd nas je velika rijéka. Vòda u rijéci bístra je i čístá.

Planinar: Tá se rijéka zove Sáva. Šad je vòda u rijéci bístra, čístá i mòdra, a kàtkada je síva i mútna.

Edward: Jè li óno stáři samoborski grád?

Planinar: Dà, to je náš stáři samoborski grád – na vrhu brijéga. Tùristi često dòlaze da vide stáři grád. Tàmo je i krásan pàrk, »Anindok«, a pòdno brijéga nalazi se líjep bàzen za plívanje. Èvo, već smo u Sàmoboru. Do vidénja.

Svi: Do vidénja.

Words and phrases

četnaesta (f.)	- fourteenth
Samoborac (m.)	- a native of the town of Samobor; also, a popular name for the train which runs from Zagreb to Samobor; people from Samobor and Zagreb would say »Samoborec«, which is a dialect form of »Samoborac«
u »Samoborc«	- in the »Samoborec« train
danas	- today
živjeti (živim)	- to live
tjedan (m.)	- week
ovog tjedna	- this week
održavati se	- to be held, to take place
(održavam se)	
iseljenički (m.), iseljenička (f.), iseljeničko (n.)	emigrant
piknik (m.)	- picnic
iseljenički piknik	- emigrants' picnic
možemo li ići »Samoborcem«?	- can we go on the »Samoborec« train?
ideja (f.)	- idea
to je zaista dobra ideja	- that is really a good idea
zar	- really
star (m.), stara (f.), staro (n.)	- old
romantičan (m.), romantična (f.), romantično (n.)	- romantic
voziti (vozim)	- to run (of trains and buses)
zar stari, romantični »Samoborec« još vozi	- does the old, romantic »Samoborec« really still run; the conjunction <i>zar</i> is a more emphatic form of the interrogative and expresses surprise
oblačiti se	- to dress (oneself)
(oblačim se)	
umivati se	- to wash (oneself)
(umivam se)	
gotov (m.), gotova (f.), gotovo (n.)	- ready
ja sam već gotova	- I am already ready
što je to	- what is this

92

što je to »Samoborec«	- what does the »Samoborec« mean
popularan (m.), popularna (f.), popularno (n.)	- popular
naziv (m.)	- name, title, term
željeznica (f.)	- railway
koji (m.), koja (f.), koje (n.)	- which
između	- between
zvati (zovem)	- to call
ljudi je zovu	- it is called; people call it (literal translation)
»peglica« (f.)	- a small iron; »peglica« is a diminutive form of the word <i>pegla</i> (iron), which is a dialect form of the word <i>glačalo</i> (iron)
divno	- wonderfully, marvellously
to je divno	- that is marvellous
odmah	- immediately, at once, straight off
ovo je	- this is
ono tamo je	- that over there is
taj (m.), ta (f.), to (n.)	- this
nego	- but
i kako je udoban	- and how comfortable it is
zvati se (zovem se)	- to be called, to have a name
srebrni (m.), srebrna (f.), srebrno (n.)	- silver
strijela (f.)	- arrow
svak (m.), svaka (f.), svako (n.)	- every; <i>svake</i> is the Genitive form of the adjective <i>svaka</i>
subota (f.)	- Saturday
nedjelja (f.)	- Sunday
svake subote i nedjelje	- every Saturday and Sunday
voziti (vozim)	- take, drive, convey in a vehicle or public conveyance
izletnik (m.)	- excursionist, tripper, tourist
planinar (m.)	- mountaineer, climber
ona vozi izletnike i planinare	- she takes (carries) excursionists and mountaineers
most (m.)	- bridge
na mostu	- on the bridge
ispod	- under

93

ispod nas	- under us
voda (f.)	- water
bistar (m.), bistra (f.), bistro (n.)	- transparent
modar (m.), modra (f.), modro (n.)	- blue
siv (m.), siva (f.), sivo (n.)	- grey
mutan (m.), mutna (f.), mutno (n.)	- muddy
grad (m.)	- castle; note that the word <i>grad</i> (town) has here the meaning of <i>castle, fortress</i>
vrh (m.)	- top
brijeg (m.)	- hill
na vrhu brijega	- on the top of a hill
turisti često dolaze da vide stari grad	- tourists often come to see the old castle
park (m.)	- park
podno	- at the foot
podno brijega	- at the foot of the hill
nalaziti se (nalazim se)	- to be situated, to be found, to find oneself
bazen (m.)	- swimming-pool
plivanje (n.)	- swimming
bazen za plivanje	- swimming-pool; a pool for swimming (literal translation)
djevojčica (f.)	- a little girl; <i>djevojčica</i> is a diminutive of the word <i>djevojka</i> (girl)

94

Conversational expressions

u »Samoborc«	- in the »Samoborec« train
danas	- today
ovog tjedna	- this week
to je zaista dobra ideja	- that is really a good idea
ja sam već gotova	- I am already ready
što je to?	- what is this?
to je divno	- that is marvellous
odmah	- immediately, at once
ovo je	- this is
ono je	- that is
kako je udoban	- how comfortable it is
svake subote i nedjelje	- every Saturday and Sunday

na mostu	- on the bridge
ispod nas	- under us
na vrhu brijega	- on the top of a hill
podno brijega	- at the foot of a hill

Grammatical explanation

1. Reflexive verbs

Many verbs in Croatian are used with the reflexive pronoun *se* e.g. *prati se* (to wash oneself). They are called reflexive verbs. The pronoun *se* has the meaning of *self*. It may or may not be expressed in the English equivalent. This means that there are verbs which are reflexive in Croatian but not in English e.g. *šaliti se* (to joke). *Se* is used for all persons in both singular and plural, and therefore corresponds to all English reflexive pronouns - *myself, thyself (yourself), himself, herself, itself, ourselves, yourselves, themselves*.

Affirmative

Singular		Singular
ja se perem	perem se	I am washing myself
ti se pereš	pereš se	you are washing yourself
on se pere	pere se	he is washing himself
ona se pere	pere se	she is washing herself
ono se pere	pere se	it is washing itself
Plural		Plural
mi se peremo	peremo se	we are washing ourselves
vi se perete	perete se	you are washing yourselves
oni se peru	peru se	they are washing themselves

95

Interrogative

Singular		Singular
da li se (ja) perem?	perem li se (ja)?	am I washing myself?
da li se (ti) pereš?	pereš li se (ti)?	are you washing yourself?
da li se (on) pere?	pere li se (on)?	is he washing himself?
da li se (ona) pere?	pere li se (ona)?	is she washing herself?
da li se (ono) pere?	pere li se (ono)?	is it washing itself?

P l u r a l	P l u r a l
da li se (mi) peremo? peremo li se (mi)? da li se (vi) perete? perete li se (vi)? da li se (oni) peru? peru li se (oni)?	are we washing ourselves? are you washing yourselves? are they washing themselves?

Negative

S i n g u l a r	S i n g u l a r
ja se ne perem ne perem se ti se ne pereš ne pereš se on se ne pere ne pere se ona se ne pere ne pere se ono se ne pere ne pere se	I am not washing myself you are not washing yourself he is not washing himself she is not washing herself
P l u r a l	P l u r a l
mi se ne peremo ne peremo se vi se ne perete ne perete se oni se ne peru ne peru se	we are not washing ourselves you are not washing yourselves they are not washing themselves

96

The pronoun *se* either precedes or follows the verb, but it cannot begin a sentence. It usually follows the verb, but it precedes it if a noun or a pronoun is used as the subject of the sentence e.g.

Perem se ujutro.	I wash myself in the morning.
Edward se sada oblači.	Edward is dressing himself now.
Ona se zove Jane.	Her name is Jane.

2. Adjectives

Adjectiv agree with the noun they qualify in case, gender and number e.g.

Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
mlad čovjek	mlada majka	mlado drvo
young man	young mother	young tree

The adjectives may be classified as soft and hard. The adjective is soft if the last consonant of the base (stem) is: *j, lj, nj, c, č, š, d, dj*. Otherwise it is hard. Thus *vruć* is soft but *nov* is hard.

Adjectives have two forms, indefinite and definite. The indefinite and the definite forms are the same with the majority of adjectives, except that the definite form has a final *i*. The indefinite and the definite forms of the adjectives *mlad* and *romantičan* are as follows:

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Indefinite:	mlad romantičan	mlada romantična	mlado romantično
Definite:	mladi romantični	mlada romantična	mlado romantično

Note that there is no difference in spelling between the indefinite and the definite forms in the Nominative singular of feminine and neuter adjectives.

Some adjectives have only the indefinite form e.g.

bratov (brother's), *prijatelj* (friend's), *sestrin* (sister's); some only the definite form e.g. *hrvatski* (Croatian), *američki* (American).

Exercises

97

Translate into Croatian:

(I)

- Is her name Vivian? No, her name is not Vivian.
- Is Edward washing himself now? No, Edward is not washing himself now.
- Does Višnja wash herself every day? Yes, Višnja washes herself every day.

(II)

Write the indefinite and the definite forms of the following adjectives: *dobar, star i nov*.

15. vježba (Pětnaesta vježba)

NA BALKÓNU BÁKINE KÙČE

John: Báko, Sámobor je *krásan grád*. Život u Sámoboru sigurno je vrlo *lijep* i *ugodan*. A je li Sámobor *stár*?

Báka: Dà, Sámobor je vrlo stár. Tó je *stári* hrvatski grád. Sámobor je pòznato ljetòvalište i izletište, a neda-leko od Sámobora nàlazi se glasóvito sumporno kù-palište. Nò, on je i *nòv* grád – u Sámoboru se náglo rãzvíja indùstrija. A sãd ìdemo na bãlkon. Mãrija i Jòsip nas tãmo čekaju.

Jane: I já ìdem na bãlkon.

Báka: Mãrijo i Jòsipe, jeste li ùmorni? Jeste li gládni?

Mary: Nismo, májko. Ovdje je tãko lijépo. Zrãk je *čist* i *tòpao*. Ugodno je sjéditi na *čistu* zrãku i na *tòplu* suncu. A pògled je s balkóna *dívan*.

Jane: A dólje je *vèlik* pòtok.

Báka: Tó je pòtok Grãdna.

Jane: Mòžemo li John, Edward i já sići do pòtoka?

Joseph: Mòžete. Ali brzo se vrãtite na ùžinu.

Báka: Lijépo je kad je čòvjek *mlád* i *zdrãv*. *Mládu* i *zdrãvu* čòvjeku ništa nije tëshko, a *bòlestan* i *stár* čòvjek nije ni za što. A sãd ìdemo na ùžinu, drãgi mòji gósti. Stól je *vèc pròstrt*.

The indefinite adjectives in the text are printed in italics.

Words and phrases

petnaesta (f.)	– fifteenth
na balkonu bakine kuće	– on the balcony of Grandmother's house
život (m.)	– life
sigurno	– certainly, surely, undoubtedly
ljetovalište (n.)	– summer holiday resort
izletište (n.)	– a place where one goes for excursions and trips
nalaziti se (nalazim se)	– to be situated, to be found, to find oneself

sumporan (m.), sumporna (f.), sumporno (n.)	– sulphur, sulphurous
kupalište (n.)	– bathing-place, watering-place
sumporno kupalište	– sulphur spa, thermae
razvijati se (razvijam se)	– to develop
naglo	– rapidly, quickly
industrija (f.)	– industry
jeste li umorni?	– are you tired?
gladan (m.), gladna (f.), gladno (n.)	– hungry
jeste li gladni?	– are you hungry?
ovdje je tako lijepo	– it is so nice here
zrak (m.)	– air
topao (m.), topla (f.), toplo (n.)	– warm
ugodno	– pleasantly
sjediti (sjedim)	– to sit
ugodno je sjediti na čistu zraku i na toplu suncu	– it is pleasant to sit in the clean air and in the warm sun
pogled (m.)	– view
pogled s balkona	– a view from the balcony
divan (m.), divna (f.), divno (n.)	– marvellous, wonderful, gorgeous, splendid
dólje	– down, below
potok (m.)	– brook
sići (sidem)	– to come down, to go down
mòžemo li sići do potoka	– can we go down to the brook
brzo	– quickly
vrãtiti se (vraćam se)	– to come back
ùžina (f.)	– a light repast; this is an in-between meal served between lunch and dinner (supper)
zdrav (m.), zdrava (f.), zdravo (n.)	– healthy
lijepo je kad je čòvjek mlád i zdrav	– it is nice when one is young and healthy
ništa	– nothing
mládu i zdrãvu čòvjeku ništa nije tëshko	– nothing is difficult for a young and healthy man; (note the double negation of the Croatian expression)

bolestan (m.), bole- sna (f.), bolesno	- sick, ill
bolestan i star čo- vjek nije ni za što	- a sick (and) old man is no good for anything
gost (m.)	- guest
dragi moji gosti	- my dear guests
prostrt (pp)	- laid, set

Conversational expressions

na balkonu bakine kuće	- on the balcony of Grandmother's house
jeste li umorni?	- are you tired?
jeste li gladni?	- are you hungry?
ovdje je tako lijepo	- it is so nice here
ugodno je sjediti na čistu zraku	- it is nice to sit in the clean air
pogled s balkona	- a view from the balcony
lijepo je kad je čo- vjek mlad i zdrav	- it is nice when one is young and healthy
100 mladu i zdravu čo- vjeku ništa nije teško	- nothing is difficult for a young and healthy man
bolestan i star čo- vjek nije ni za što	- a sick and old man is no good for anything
dragi moji gosti	- my dear guests
stol je već prostrt	- the table is already laid (set)

Grammatical explanation

1. Indefinite adjectives

Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
mlad	mlada	mlado
topao	topla	toplo
vruć	vruća	vruće

The Nominative singular masculine ends in a consonant e.g. *nov*, or in an *-o* which is derived from *-l* e.g. *topao*. Neuter adjectives

ending in a soft consonant have the ending *-e* in the Nominative singular e.g. *vruće*.

2. Declension of indefinite adjectives

Singular

Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
N. mlad	mlad-a	mlad-o
G. mlad-a	mlad-e	mlad-a
D. mlad-u	mlad- <i>oj</i>	mlad-u
A. mlad, mlad-a	mlad-u	mlad-o
V. mlad-i (mlad)	mlad-a	mlad-o
P. mlad-u	mlad- <i>oj</i>	mlad-u
I. mlad-im	mlad- <i>om</i>	mlad-im

Indefinite adjectives are declined in the singular like masculine nouns in the singular except for the Instrumental singular.

The Instrumental singular of indefinite adjectives has the ending *-im* for the masculine and neuter genders, and *-om* for the feminine.

In the masculine singular of indefinite adjectives the Accusative is the same as the Nominative if the noun is inanimate, but the same as the Genitive if the noun is animate

Plural

Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
N. mlad-i	mlad-e	mlad-a
G. mlad-ih	mlad-ih	mlad-ih
D. mlad-im(a)	mlad-im(a)	mlad-im(a)
A. mlad-e	mlad-e	mlad-a
V. mlad-i	mlad-e	mlad-a
P. mlad-im(a)	mlad-im(a)	mlad-im(a)
I. mlad-im(a)	mlad-im(a)	mlad-im(a)

Masculine indefinite adjectives ending in *-o* formerly ended in *-l* but the *-l* was changed into *-o* with the development of the language. The *-l* appears in all cases except the Nominative singular and

those cases which have the same form as the latter. The feminine and neuter forms have the *-l*. The declension of the adjective *topao*, *topla*, *toplo* (warm) in the masculine singular runs as follows: N. *topao*, G. *topl-a*, D. *topl-u*, A. *topao (topl-a)*, V. *topl-i*, P. *topl-u*, I. *topl-im*.

When the indefinite adjective ends in *-o* which is derived from *-l*, mobile *-a* appears e.g. *topao*, *topla*, *toplo*.

Exercises

Translation from Lesson 14:

(I)

1. Zove li se ona Vivian? Ne, ona se ne zove Vivian.
2. Pere li se Edward sada? Ne, Edward se sada ne pere.
3. Pere li se Višnja svaki dan? Da, Višnja se pere svaki dan.

(II)

The indefinite and definite forms of the adjectives from Lesson 14 are as follows: *dobar*, *dobra*, *dobro* (indefinite) – *dobri*, *dobra*, *dobro* (definite); *star*, *stara*, *staro* – *stari*, *stara*, *staro*; *nov*, *nova*, *novo* – *novi*, *nova*, *novo*.

16. vježba (Šesnaesta vježba)

U PRODAVAÏNICI NÁRODNIH RUKOTVÏRINA

- Mary: Døbar dán.
Prodavač: Døbar dán. Štò želite, gøspodo? Štò želiš, djevøj-
čice?
Mary: Imate li národne stòlnjake?
Prodavač: Kákav stòlnjak želite? U kòjoj bøji? Črven, plāv,
želen ili črn?
Mary: Mølim vas ònaj *črveni* stòlnjak, a i ònaj *črni*. Črn
stòlnjak vrlo je elegantan.
Prodavač: Øvo je vrlo lijep *dømaći* stòlnjak.
Mary: Kòliko kòšta?
Prodavač: Pèt tisuća ðinara.
Mary: Kùpit ću dvā stòlnjaka: *črveni* i *črni*.
Jane: A já kùpujem lùtku u hrvatskoj národnoj nòšnji.
Prodavač: Kòju lùtku, mølim?
Jane: Ønu tåmo – u črvenoj nòšnji.
Prodavač: Tò je lùtku u národnoj nòšnji iz Pøsavine.
Jane: Ima lijep prsluk. A kòliko støji?
Prodavač: Četiri tisuće ðinara.
Jane: Vrlo je skùpa, àli je lijepa. Štò ti misliš, måma?
Mary: Mislim da je lùtku u pøsavskoj národnoj nòšnji
zåista lijepa. U Amèrici ljúdi nè nose národnu
nòšnju kao u *stårom* kråju. Mølim račun.
Prodavač: Izvølite plåtiti na blågajni.
Prodavač: Hvála vam. Do vidénja.
Jane: Do vidénja.
Mary: Do vidénja.

The definite adjectives in the text are printed in italics.

Words and phrases

šesnaesta (f.)	- sixteenth
rukotvorina (f.)	- thing produced or manufactured by hand; a hand-made article
prodavaonica rukotvorina	- shop where hand-made goods are sold
prodavač (m.)	- salesman, shop-assistant
prodavačica (f.)	- saleswoman, female shop-assistant
što želite, gospodo?	- what would you like madam?
što želiš, djevojčice?	- what would you (s.) like, little girl?
stolnjak (m.)	- table-cloth
kakav (m.), kakva (f.), kakvo (n.)	- what kind (sort) of
kakav stolnjak želite?	- what kind of table-cloth do you want?
boja (f.)	- colour
u kojoj boji?	- what colour?
plav (m.), plava (f.), plavo (n.)	- blue
crn (m.), crna (f.), crno (n.)	- black
zelen (m.), zelena (f.), zeleno (n.)	- green
104 molim vas	- please; the literal translation of the expression <i>molim vas</i> is <i>I beg you</i> ; <i>molim</i> comes from the verb <i>moliti</i> (to beg, to ask for)
također	- also, too
molim vas ovaj crveni stolnjak?	- give me this red table-cloth, please?
elegantan (m.), elegantna (f.), elegantno (n.)	- elegant
domaći (m.), domaća (f.), domaće (n.)	- domestic
kupit ću	- I will buy
lutka (f.)	- doll
koju lutku, molim?	- which doll, please?
Posavina (f.)	- a part of Croatia along the river Sava
prsluk (m.)	- waistcoat
stajati (stojim)	- to cost
skup (m.), skupa (f.), skupo (n.)	- expensive
misliti (mislim)	- to think
što ti misliš?	- what do you (thou) think?

da	- that
posavski (m.), po- savska (f.), posav- sko (n.)	- Posavina, from Posavina
Amerika (f.)	- America
u Americi	- in America
nositi (nosim)	- to wear
kraj (m.)	- a part of the country (literally); home, homeland, fatherland
stari kraj	- old mother country, old fatherland; <i>stari kraj</i> when used by Croatian emigrants in America means <i>Croatia</i>
molim račun platiti (platim)	- can I have the bill, please
blagajna (f.)	- to pay
na blagajni	- paying-desk, cash-desk
izvolite platiti na blagajni	- at the paying-desk
	- please pay at the paying-desk

Conversational expressions

što želite, gospodo?	- what would you like, madam (lady)?
što želiš, djevojčice?	- what would you (thou) like, little girl?
kakav stolnjak želite?	- what kind (sort) of table-cloth do you want?
u kojoj boji?	- what colour?
molim vas ovaj crveni stolnjak	- give me this red table-cloth, please
što ti misliš?	- what do you (thou) think?
u Americi	- in America
stari kraj	- old mother country
molim račun	- can I have the bill, please
izvolite platiti na blagajni	- please pay at the paying-desk

1. Declension of definite adjectives

Singular

Masculine	
Hard	Soft
N. mlad-i	domać-i
G. mlad-og(a)	domać-eg(a)
D. mlad-om(e,u)	domać-em(u)
A. mlad-i	domać-i
mlad-og(a)	domać-eg(a)
V. mlad-i	domać-i
P. mlad-om(e)	domać-em(u)
I. mlad-im	domać-im

106 In the masculine singular of definite adjectives the Accusative is the same as the Nominative if the noun is inanimate, but the same as the Genitive if the noun is animate.

Feminine
N. mlad-a
G. mlad-e
D. mlad-oj
A. mlad-u
V. mlad-a
P. mlad-oj
I. mlad-om

Neuter	
Hard	Soft
N. mlad-o	domać-e
G. mlad-og(a)	domać-eg(a)
D. mlad-om	domać-em(u)
A. mlad-o	domać-e
V. mlad-o	domać-e
P. mlad-om(e)	domać-em(u)
I. mlad-im	domać-im

Plural

Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
N. mlad-i	mlad-e	mlad-a
G. mlad-ih	mlad-ih	mlad-ih
D. mlad-im(a)	mlad-ima	mlad-im(a)
A. mlad-e	mlad-e	mlad-a
V. mlad-i	mlad-e	mlad-a
P. mlad-im(a)	mlad-im(a)	mlad-im(a)
I. mlad-im(a)	mlad-im(a)	mlad-im(a)

In the declension of the definite adjective there is a difference between the hard and the soft category of adjectives in the masculine and neuter singular but not in the feminine singular or plurals of any gender.

After a soft consonant the sound *-o* is changed into *-e*. This change appears in the Genitive, Dative and Prepositional masculine and neuter singular, and in the Nominative and Accusative neuter singular.

Longer and shorter endings appear in some cases: in the Genitive, Dative and Prepositional singular masculine and neuter, and in the Dative, Prepositional and Instrumental of all genders. Thus in the Genitive singular masculine we may have either *mladog* or *mladoga*. Sometimes the longer endings are used, sometimes the shorter. There is a tendency to use the shorter forms more often.

2. The usage of the indefinite and the definite adjective

Distinction between the usage of the indefinite and the definite adjective is similar to the distinction made in English between the usages of the definite and indefinite articles. It is often correct to use the indefinite adjective in Croatian where the indefinite article *a* would be used in English before the noun it is qualifying; and to use the definite adjective if in English the definite article *the* would be required. This parallel does not always hold good.

Examples:

Ivanov kaput je nov. Ivan's coat is a new one.
 Gdje je novi kaput? Where is the new coat?
 Kakav stolnjak želite, What sort of a table-cloth do you want,
 crn ili smeđ? a black one or a brown one?

Novi je stolnjak vrlo lijep. The new table-cloth is very nice.

The distinction between indefinite and definite adjectives is becoming more inconsistent. In spoken language the definite form is used far more than the indefinite. There is a general rule which may help the learner to use the two forms of the adjective more correctly: the indefinite form is used for adjectives which are predicative and the definite for those which are attributive e.g.

Indefinite

Samobor je star.
Samobor is old.
John je mlad.
John is young.
Pogled je s terase krasan.
The view from the terrace is marvellous.

108

Definite

Stari samoborski grad smješten je na vrhu brijega.
The old Samobor castle is situated at the top of a hill.
Crveni je tanjur kraj modroga.
The red plate is near the blue one.
Novi prsluk vrlo je lijep.
The new waistcoat is very nice.

Exercises

(I)

Give the masculine singular indefinite form of the following definite adjectives: skupi, elegantni, zeleni, crni, bolesni, divni, topli, gladni, ukusni, dobri.

(II)

Give the masculine singular definite form of the following indefinite adjectives: sumporan, mutan, siv, modar, bistar, popularan, gotov, romantičan, star, žedan.

Translate into Croatian:

(III)

1. The air is clean and warm.
2. The view from the balcony is georgeous.
3. This table-cloth is blue, and that one is red.
4. A sick man is not able to work.
5. It is pleasant to sit in the warm sun.
6. The swimming-pool is situated at the foot of the hill.
7. Life in a large town is interesting.
8. My friend is sitting in the large park.
9. The red car is on the right.
10. I want to buy that black table-cloth.

109

17. vježba (Sedamnaesta vježba)

U RESTORÁNU »LÀVICA«

- Joseph:** Dobar večer. Je li ovaj stol slobodan?
Konobar: Da, slobodan je. Izvolite sjesti. *Höćete li večerati?*
Joseph: *Höćemo.* Što imate za večeru?
Konobar: Imamo hladne nareške, pileću i govedu juhu, teleće pečenje, biftek, salatu i kolač.
Joseph: Já volim biftek. I John i Edward vole biftek. Jane, *höćes li* i ti biftek?
Jane: Hvala, *něću.* Já ně volim biftek. Volim teleće pečenje.
Mary: I já *ću* teleće pečenje, kao i Jane. A imate li savijaču od trešanja? Mi svi volimo savijaču od trešanja.
Konobar: Imamo. A kakvo piće želite?
Joseph: Litru vina. A za djecu, što *ćemo* za Edwarda i Jane?
Konobar: Imamo odličan voćni sok od jagoda.
Mary: To je odlično. Djeca vole sok od jagoda.
Joseph: Molim vas, donesite pet govodih juha, tri bifteka, dva teleća pečenja, pet salata i pet kolača. Da, i litru vina, i dva voćna soka.
Konobar: Odmah, molim.

The forms of the verb *htjeti* are printed in italics.

Words and phrases

sedamnaesta (f.)	- seventeenth
restoran (m.)	- restaurant
u restoranu	- in the restaurant
»Lavica« (f.)	- the name of a restaurant in Samobor
večer (m.)	- evening
dobar večer	- good evening
slobodan (m.), slobodna (f.), slobodno (n.)	- free, unoccupied, unreserved
je li onaj stol slobodan	- is that table free?

večerati (večeram) höćete li večerati?	- to have dinner (supper) - would you like to have dinner?, do you want to have dinner?
večera (f.) što imate za večeru?	- dinner, supper - what have you got for dinner?
hladan (m.), hladna (f.), hladno (n.)	- cold
narezak (m.)	- cut, a slice of something (ham, sausages, etc.)
hladni naresci (pl.)	- cold cuts; slices of various sorts of sausages, salamis, ham or cheese eaten as the first course of the meal (hours d'ouvre)
govedi (m.), goveda (f.), govode (n.)	- beef
goveda juha	- beef soup
teleći (m.), teleća (f.), teleće (n.)	- veal
pečenje (n.)	- roast meat
teleće pečenje	- roast veal
biftek (m.)	- beefsteak
kolač (m.)	- cake
kao i piće (n.)	- as, like drink
kakav (m.), kakva (f.), kakvo (n.)	- what kind (sort) of
kakvo piće želite?	- what would you like to drink?; what sort of drink would you like?
litra (f.)	- litre (liter), about 1 3/4 pints
vino (f.)	- wine
litru vina	- a litre of wine; <i>litru</i> is the Accusative of the word <i>litra</i>
djeca (pl.)	children; the word <i>djeca</i> is a collective noun; it is declined like feminine singular nouns in <i>-a</i> (<i>žena</i>) but takes a plural verb
voćni (m.), voćna (f.), voćno (n.)	- fruit
sok (m.)	- juice
voćni sok	- fruit juice
jagoda (f.)	- strawberry
voćni sok od jagoda	- strawberry juice
to je odlično	- that is excellent
donesite	- bring
molim vas donesite?	- will you please bring?
odmah	- presently, immediately, at once
odmah, molim	- I am just coming

Conversational expressions

u restoranu	- in the restaurant
dobar večer	- good evening
je li onaj stol slobodan?	- is that table free?
hoćete li večerati?	- would you like to have dinner?
što imate za večeru?	- what have you got for dinner?
kakvo piće želite?	- what would you like to drink?
to je odlično	- that is excellent
molim vas donesite	- will you please bring

Grammatical explanation

1. The Present Tense of the verb htjeti (to want, to wish for)

Affirmative

Short form	Long form		
Singular		Singular	
ja ću	(ja) hoću	I shall (will)	I want
ti ćeš	(ti) hoćeš	you will	you want
on će	(on) hoće	he will	he wants
ona će	(ona) hoće	she will	she wants
ono će	(ono) hoće	it will	it wants
Plural		Plural	
mi ćemo	(mi) hoćemo	we shall (will)	we want
vi ćete	(vi) hoćete	you will	you want
oni će	(oni) hoće	they will	they want

Interrogative

Singular		Singular	
hoću li?	da li (ja) hoću?	shall (will) I?	do I want?
hoćeš li?	da li (ti) hoćeš?	will you?	do you want?
hoće li?	da li (on) hoće?	will he?	does he want?
hoće li?	da li (ona) hoće?	will she?	does she want?
hoće li?	da li (ono) hoće?	will it?	does it want?

Plural		Plural	
hoćemo li?	da li (mi) hoćemo?	shall (will) we?	do we want?
hoćete li?	da li (vi) hoćete?	will you?	do you want?
hoće li?	da li (oni) hoće?	will they?	do they want?

Negative

Singular		Singular	
(ja) neću	I shall (will) not	I do not want	
(ti) nećeš	you will not	you do not want	
(on) neće	he will not	he does not want	
(ona) neće	she will not	she does not want	
(ono) neće	it will not	it does not want	
Plural		Plural	
(mi) nećemo	we shall (will) not	we do not want	
(vi) nećete	you will not	you do not want	
(oni) neće	they will not	they do not want	

112

113

The verb *htjeti* is used as a principal and as an auxiliary verb. When used as a principal verb it means *to want, to wish for*. As an auxiliary it is used in forming the Future Tense. In this lesson the verb *htjeti* is used as a principal verb.

In the following examples the verb *htjeti* is used as a principal verb:

Hoćete li večerati?	Do you want to have supper?
Hoćeš li čaja?	Do thou (you) want some tea?
Što ćemo za djecu?	What shall we have (order) for the children?
Hvala, neću biftek.	No, thank you, I do not want beefsteak.
Hoćete li u restoran?	Would you like to go to the restaurant?
A što ćeš ti? Ja ću teleće pečenje.	And what would thou (you) like? I want roast veal.

(I)

The masculine singular indefinite form of the adjectives from Lesson 16 is as follows: skup, elegantan, zelen, crn, bolestan, divan, topao, gladan, ukusan, dobar.

(II)

The masculine singular definite form of the adjectives from Lesson 16 is as follows: sumporni, mutni, sivi, modri, bistri, popularni, gotovi, romantični, stari, žedni.

Translation from Lesson 16:

(III)

1. Zrak je čist i topao.
2. Pogled s balkona je divan.
3. Ovaj stolnjak je modar, a onaj je crn.
4. Bolestan čovjek ne može raditi.
5. Ugodno je sjediti na toplu suncu.
6. Bazen je smješten podno brda.
7. U velikom gradu život je zanimljiv.
8. Moj prijatelj sjedi u velikom parku.
9. Crveni je auto nadesno.
10. Želim kupiti onaj crni stolnjak.

18. vježba (Osamnaesta vježba)

ISELJENIČKI PIKNIK U SÀMOBORU

- Báka:** Gdjè su djèca?
Mary: Igraju se za kùcom u vrtu.
Joseph: Èvo, već dólaze. Djèco, sùtra će se kraj Sàmobora *održati* iseljènički piknik.
John: A gdjè *će se održati* iseljènički piknik. Mòžda u sèlu Mìrnovcu?
Joseph: Nè, piknik se *néće održati* u sèlu Mìrnovcu. nègo na Šmìdhenovu kùpalištu nèdaleko od Sàmobora.
Edward: *Hóće li* tàmò biti Jòsip, Ivan i Àntun?
Joseph: Dà, i òni *će biti* tàmò – i gospòdin i gòspoda Kòvačić. I mnògi drùgi iseljeníci iz Amèrike. Na pikniku *će govòriti* prèdsjednik Hrvatske màtice iseljeníka. *Nastùpit će* dòmaći ansàmbli, tambùraški òrkestar gràdišćanskih Hrváta »Cindrof« i amèrički òrkestar »The Pittsburgh Junior Tamburitzans«.
Edward: *Hóće li* báka *ići* na piknik?
Mary: Náravno, svì *ćemo biti* na pikniku.
Jane: *Zàr će ići* i báka? A tkò *će kùhati* òbjed i večeru za vrijeme piknika?
Báka: Drága Jane, ja *ću* òbjed i večeru *dònijeti* u kòšari – tó *će biti* právi piknik.
Jane: Dìvno! *Bít će* tó zàista òdivno! Tò *će biti* právo národno vesélje.
 The Future Tense is printed in italics.

Words and phrases

osamnaesta (f.)	– eighteenth
gdje su djeca?	– where are the children?
igrati se (igram se)	– to play
evo	– look, there, look there, see, see there
dolaziti (dolazim)	– to come
evo, već dolaze	– look, here they are; they are coming (literal translation)

održati se (održim se)	- to take place, to be held
sutra će se održati iseljenički piknik	- the Emigrants' picnic will be held tomorrow
možda	- perhaps
selo (n.)	- village
Mirnovec	- Mirnovec, the name of a village near Samobor
u Mirnovcu	- in Mirnovec
nego	- but
Šmidhenov, a, o	- Šmidhen's
Šmidhenovo kupalište	- Šmidhen's bathing-place, Šmidhen's spa
mnogi (m.), mnoga (f.), mnogo (n.)	- many
predsjednik (m.)	- president
nastupiti (nastupam)	- to take part in the programme
ansambl (m.)	- ensemble
tamburaški, a, o	- tamburitza; the adjective <i>tamburaški</i> comes from the word <i>tamburica</i> which denotes a kind of musical instrument played in Croatia.
orkestar (m.)	- orchestra
gradišćanski, a, o	- from Gradišće (Burgenland in Austria); Croats living in Gradišće are called »gradišćanski Hrvati«
gradišćanski Hrvati	- Croats from Gradišće
i	- and
naravno	- naturally, surely, certainly, of course
zar će ići i baka?	- will Grandmother really go too?
tko	- who
kuhati (kuham)	- to cook
za vrijeme	- during
donijeti (donosim)	- to bring
košara (f.)	- basket
u košari	- in the basket
to će biti pravi piknik	- it will be a real picnic
veselje (n.)	- merry-making, entertainment
to će biti pravo na- rodno veselje	- it will be a real national merry-making

Conversational expressions

gdje su djeca?	- where are the children?
evo, već dolaze	- look, here they are
naravno	- naturally, of course
zar će ići i baka?	- will Grandmother really go too?
u košari	- in the basket
to će biti pravi piknik	- it will be a real picnic

Grammatical explanation

1. Future Tense

Affirmative

Singular		Singular
ja ću biti	bit ću	I shall (will) be
ti ćeš biti	bit ćeš	you will be
on će biti	bit će	he will be
ona će biti	bit će	she will be
ono će biti	bit će	it will be
Plural		Plural
mi ćemo biti	bit ćemo	we shall (will) be
vi ćete biti	bit ćete	you will be
oni će biti	bit će	they will be

The Future Tense is formed with the short form of the verb *htjeti* and the infinitive of the verb concerned e.g.

Ti ćeš raditi. You will work.

Since the auxiliary verb already indicates person and number, any noun or pronoun used as a subject may be omitted e.g.

Radit ćeš. You will work.

If the infinitive precedes the auxiliary, the final *-i* of any *-ti* infinitive is omitted. So we say *Ja ću raditi* (I will work) and *Radit ću* (I will work).

Interrogative

Singular		Singular
hoću li (ja) biti	da li ću (ja) biti	shall (will) I be
hoćeš li (ti) biti	da li ćeš (ti) biti	will you be
hoće li (on) biti	da li će (on) biti	will he be
hoće li (ona) biti	da li će (ona) biti	will she be
hoće li (ono) biti	da li će (ono) biti	will it be
Plural		Plural
hoćemo li (mi) biti	da li ćemo (mi) biti	shall (will) we be
hoćete li (vi) biti	da li ćete (vi) biti	will you be
hoće li (oni) biti	da li će (oni) biti	will they be

The interrogative form of the Future Tense is formed with the interrogative longer forms of the verb *htjeti*, followed immediately by *li*, and the infinitive of the verb concerned. In this case the interrogative auxiliary begins the sentence e.g.

118

Hoćeš li raditi? Will you work?
Gdje će se održati piknik? Where will the picnic take place?

Negative

Singular		Singular
ja neću biti	neću biti	I shall (will) not be you will not be he will not be she will not be it will not be
ti nećeš biti	nećeš biti	
on neće biti	neće biti	
ona neće biti	neće biti	
ono neće biti	neće biti	
Plural		Plural
mi nećemo biti	nećemo biti	we shall (will) not be you will not be they will not be
vi nećete biti	nećete biti	
oni neće biti	neće biti	

The negative form of the Future Tense is formed with the negative form of the verb *htjeti* and the infinitive of the verb concerned e.g.

Ti nećeš raditi. You will not work.
Nećeš raditi. You will not work.

2. The interrogative conjunction *zar*

The interrogative conjunction *zar* is an emphatic form of the interrogative. It expresses surprise and is placed at the beginning of the sentence e.g.

Zar Samoborec još vozi? – Does the Samoborec train still run?
Zar je on kod kuće? – Is he really at home?
Zar će ići i baka? – Will grandmother really go too?

3. Prepositions (continued)

Preposition *za* (for, behind)

The preposition *za* is used with the Genitive, Accusative and Prepositional cases:

za with the Genitive:

Tko će kuhati objed i večeru za vrijeme piknika? Who will cook lunch and dinner during the picnic?

za with the Accusative:

Što imamo za doručak? What have we got for breakfast?
Zeno, što imamo za objed? Dear, what have we got for lunch?

Za objed je pileća juha, pohani pilići, kolač i voće. For lunch we have got chicken soup, deep-fried spring-chicken, cake and fruit.

Podno brijega nalazi se lijep bazen za plivanje. There is a nice swimming-pool at the foot of the hill.

Što imate za večeru? What have you got for dinner?

za with the Instrumental:

Djeca se igraju u vrtu za kućom. The children are playing in the garden behind the house.

119

Put into the Future Tense:

(I)

1. (Ja) radim. (Ja) ne radim. Radim li?
2. (Ti) pričaš. (Ti) ne pričaš. Pričaš li?
3. (On) čeka. (On) ne čeka. Čeka li?
4. (Mi) govorimo. (Mi) ne govorimo. Govorimo li?
5. (Oni) idu. (Oni) ne idu. Idu li?

Translate into Croatian:

(II)

1. Isn't she in the bank?
2. Aren't they at the seaside?
3. Is Antun really in the car?
4. Is this really all?
5. Are the gramophone records really so cheap?
6. Will he really be there?

(III)

1. What have we got for lunch?
2. I will buy a table-cloth for Mother.
3. The children are playing behind the house.
4. We have coffee and tea for breakfast.
5. She works for children.

(IV)

1. Her name is Jane.
2. Edward is dressing (himself) now.
3. Is the Emigrants' picnic held in Samobor?
4. The swimming-pool is situated at the foot of a hill.
5. I am in Dubrovnik. (Use *nalaziti se*.)
6. The children are playing in the garden.
7. John washes himself every day.
8. Industry is being developed in Samobor.

19. vježba (Devetnaesta vježba)

NA PÒVRATKU IZ KÍNA

John: Štò misliš o filmu?

Jòsip: Mislim da je film òdličan. Glávni glúmác i glávna glúmíca òdbrò glúme, a òsim tòga, u filmu íma mnògo zanimljívih stvári i líjepih míslí. Jèdnòm ríjèčju: òdličan fílm. Nò, já sam gláðan. Jèsi li tí gláðan? Hòćeš li nèšto jèsti?

John: Dà, gláðan sam.

Jòsip: Èvo restorána. Dòbar večer.

Kònobaríca: Dòbar večer. Izvòlíte jèlovnik.

Jòsip: Hvála. Jòhne, štò žèliš jèsti? Mòžemo narúčiti òvápčíce i ràžnjíce. Já ću ràžnjíce. Hòćeš li òvápčíce?

John: A štò su òvápčící.

Jòsip: Vídjet ćeš – tó je naše národno jèlo. Kào i ràžnjící. Mòlim vas pòrcíju òvápčícía i pòrcíju ràžnjícía.

Kònobaríca: Štò žèlíte pítí?

Jòsip: Pívo. Mòlim vas bòcu píva.

Kònobaríca: Òdmah, mòlim.

John: Òvog tjedna íći ćemo na ízlet u Hrvatsko zágorje. Sví íseljenící íći će na taj ízlet. Èvo kònobaríce. Jèsu li tó òvápčící?

Jòsip: Dà, to su òvápčící sa sírovim ízrezanim lùkom. A òvo su ràžnjící. Dòbar ték, Jòhne!

John: Dòbar ték, Jòsipe! Óvápčící su ízvršní.

Jòsip: I ràžnjící. Álí nèmamo mnògo vrèmena. Ròditelji me čekaju. Večeras ćemo putòvati u Zágreb.

John: Hvála na večeri. Bíla je ízvršna. Do vídénja u Zágrebu!

Jòsip: Do vídénja!

Words and phrases

122

devetnaesta (f.)	- nineteenth
povratak (m.)	- way back, return
na povratku	- on the way back
kino (n.)	- cinema, movie
iz kina	- from the cinema, from the movie
na povratku iz kina	- on the way back from the cinema
misliti (mislim)	- to think
film (m.)	- film
o filmu	- about the film
što misliš o filmu?	- what do you (thou) think about the film?
mislim da je film odličan	- I think that the film is excellent
glavni (m.), glavna (f.), glavno (n.)	- main
glumac (m.)	- actor
glumica (f.)	- actress
dobro	- well, good
glumiti (glumim)	- to act
osim toga	- besides
stvar (f.)	- thing, matter
misao (f.)	- thought
jednom riječju	- in a word; <i>riječju</i> is the Instrumental of the word <i>riječ</i>
nešto	- something
jesti (jedem)	- to eat
hoćeš li nešto jesti?	- would you (thou) like something to eat?; do you want something to eat?
konobarica (f.)	- waitress
jelovnik (m.)	- menu
izvolite jelovnik	- here is the menu; take the menu, please (literal translation)
jelo (n.)	- food, meal, dish
što želiš jesti?	- what would you (s.) like to eat?, what do you want to eat?
naručiti (naručim)	- to order
čevapčići (pl.)	- čevapčići; tiny rolls of ground meat broiled and served with chopped raw onions
ražnjići (pl.)	- ražnjići; bits of pork broiled on a skewer and served with chopped raw onions
možemo naručiti čevapčice i ražnjiće	- we can order čevapčići and ražnjići
to je naše narodno jelo	- this is our national dish

porcija (f.)	- portion, helping
molim vas porciju čevapčića	- a portion of čevapčići, please
što želite piti?	- what would you like to drink, what do you want to drink?
pivo (n.)	- beer
boca (f.)	- bottle
molim vas bocu piva	- a bottle of beer, please
tjedan (m.)	- week
ovog tjedna	- this week
izlet (m.)	- outing, excursion, trip
ići ćemo na izlet u Hrvatsko zagorje	- we are going for an excursion to the Croatian Zagorje
sirov (m.), sirova (f.), sirovo (n.)	- raw
izrezan (m.), izrezana (f.), izrezano (n.)	- chopped, cut
luk (m.)	- onions
izvrstan (m.), izvrsna (f.), izvrsno (n.)	- excellent, extraordinarily good, delicious
me	- me; <i>me</i> is the Accusative of the personal pronoun <i>ja</i>
roditelji me čekaju	- (my) parents are waiting for me
večeras	- this evening
hvala na večeri	- thank you for the dinner
bila je izvrsna	- it (dinner) was excellent

Conversational expressions

na povratku iz kina	- on the way back from the cinema
što misliš o filmu?	- what do thou (you) think about the film?
osim toga	- besides
jednom riječju	- in a word
hoćeš li nešto jesti?	- would thou (you) like something to eat?
izvolite jelovnik	- here is the menu; take the menu, please (literal translation)
što želiš jesti?	- what would you (s.) like to eat?
molim vas porciju čevapčića	- a portion of čevapčići, please
što želite piti?	- what would you like to drink?
molim vas bocu piva	- a bottle of beer, please

123

ovog tjedna - this week
 hvala na večeri - thank you for the dinner

Grammatical explanation

1. Declension of feminine nouns (continued)

Some feminine nouns end in a consonant and some in *-o* e.g. stvar (thing, matter), radost (happiness), ljubav (love), misao (thought). Their declension is very simple. In nouns like *misao* the final sound *-o* is derived from *-l*. The base (stem) of such nouns is the same as the Nominative singular except that the final *-o* reverts to *-l* and the preceding sound disappears. So the stem of *misao* is *misl-*. Note that the preceding sound is mobile *-a*. The Instrumental has two endings: *-ju* and *-i*; sometimes one ending is used, sometimes the other.

The Instrumental of *misao* is *mišlju*; from *misl-ju* we get *mišlju*; and from *mišlju* we get *mišlju* according to the rule that *s* in front of *lj* is replaced by *š*.

Singular

N. stvar	N. misao
G. stvar-i	G. misl-i
D. stvar-i	D. misl-i
A. stvar	A. misao
V. stvar-i	V. misl-i
P. stvar-i	P. misl-i
I. stvar-ju	I. mišlju
stvar-i	misl-i

Plural

N. stvar-i	N. misl-i
G. stvar-i	G. misl-i
D. stvar-ima	D. misl-ima
A. stvar-i	A. misl-i
V. stvar-i	V. misl-i
P. stvar-ima	P. misl-ima
I. stvar-ima	I. misl-ima

2. Prepositions (continued)

Preposition *iz* (from)

The preposition *iz* is used with the Genitive:

iz with the Genitive:

Moji prijatelji iz Njemačke vole kontinentalni doručak.	My friends from Germany like continental breakfast.
To su seljak i seljanka iz okolice Zagreba.	Those are a peasant and a peasant-woman from the neighbourhood of Zagreb.
Ovo su ploče s pjesmama iz Slavonije i Dalmacije.	These are records of songs from Slavonia and Dalmatia.
Moj je djed iz Dalmacije, a moja baka iz okolice Samobora.	My grandfather comes from Dalmatia and my grandmother from the surroundings of Samobor.
Ja sam iz Amerike.	I come from America.

Exercises

Translate into Croatian:

(I)

1. Are you from America?
2. My grandmother is not from Dalmatia, she is from the surroundings of Zagreb.
3. Do you like songs from Croatia?
4. Have you got cherries from Dalmatia?
5. Do you want wine or liqueur from Dalmatia?

The Future Tense of the sentences from Lesson 18:

(I)

1. Ja ću raditi. (Radit ću.) Ja neću raditi. (Neću raditi.) Hoću li raditi? (Da li ću raditi?)
2. Ti ćeš pričati (Pričat ćeš.) Ti nećeš pričati. (Nećeš pričati.) Hoćeš li pričati? (Da li ćeš pričati?)
3. On će čekati. (Čekat će.) On neće čekati. (Neće čekati.) Hoće li čekati? (Da li će čekati?)
4. Mi ćemo govoriti. (Govorit ćemo.) Mi nećemo govoriti. (Nećemo govoriti.) Hoćemo li govoriti? (Da li ćemo govoriti?)
5. Oni će ići. (Ići će.) Oni neće ići. (Neće ići.) Hoće li oni ići? (Da li će ići?)

Translation from Lesson 18:

(II)

1. Zar ona nije u banci?
2. Zar oni nisu na moru?
3. Zar je Antun u automobilu?
4. Zar je to sve?
5. Zar su gramofonske ploče tako jeftine?
6. Zar će on zaista tamo biti?

(III)

1. Što je za objed?
2. Kupit ću stolnjak za majku.
3. Djeca se igraju za kućom.
4. Za doručak imamo kavu i čaj.
5. Ona radi za djecu.

(IV)

1. Ona se zove Jane.
2. Edward se sad oblači.
3. Održava li se iseljenički piknik u Samoboru?
4. Plivači se bazen nalazi podno brjega.
5. Nalazim se u Dubrovniku.
6. Djeca se igraju u vrtu.
7. John se pere svaki dan.
8. U Samoboru se razvija industrija.

126

20. vježba (Dvadeseta vježba)

ŠÉTNJA SÁMOBOROM

Edward: *Bili smo* čak do stároga gráda. *Razglédali smo* stá-ri grád Sámobor.

Báka: *Tko je bio* na stárom grádu? *Jesi li ti bio* na stá-rom grádu?

Edward: Dà, *ja sam bio* na stárom grádu, John *je bio* na stárom grádu i Jane *je bila* na stárom grádu.

Báka: *Jeste li* i máma i táta *bili* na stárom grádu.

Edward: Dà, i *oni su bili* na stárom grádu. Tàmo *smo vidjeli* mnògo túrista. Oni su *razglédali* stári grád. Bá-ko, stári grád pòtječe iz trínaestog stòljeća.

Báka: Dà, nàš stári grád vrlo je stár. U Hrvatskoj ima mnò-go stárih grádova.

Jane: *Posjetili smo* i Lívadićev dvórac. Lívadić je hrvatski kompòzitor; živio je u Sámoboru. Njègova kúća sà-đa je mùzej gráda Sámobora.

Báka: U Sámoboru i oko Sámobora ima mnògo stárih dvóraca.

Edward: *Bili smo* i u pàrku Anindol. *Vidjeli smo* mnògo za-nimljivih stvári.

Báka: A jeste li gládni?

Edward: Dà, gládni smo.

Báka: Vèčera je gòtova. A èvo i máme, táte i Johna.

The Perfect Tense is printed in italics.

127

Words and phrases

dvadeseta (f.)	- twentieth
šetnja (f.)	- walk
šetnja Samoborom	- a walk around Samobor
čak	- even
bili smo čak do staroga grada	- we have even been as far as the old castle; we have been right up to the old castle
iko	- who
razgledali smo stari grad	- we were having a look around the old castle

tamo	- there
potjecati (potječem)	- to date from, to date back to; to originate
stari grad potječe	- the old town dates from the thirteenth century
iz trinaestog stoljeća	
dvorac (m.)	- castle
Livadićev dvorac	- Livadić's castle
kompozitor (m.)	- composer
muzej (m.)	- museum
oko	- around, about, round about
oko Samobora	- around Samobor
Anindol (m.)	- Anindol, the name of a park in Samobor
vidjeli smo mnogo zanimljivih stvari	- we have seen a lot of interesting things
jeste li gladni?	- are you hungry?

Conversational expressions

šetnja Samoborom	- a walk around Samobor
bili smo čak do staroga grada	- we have even been as far as the old castle
razgledali smo stari grad	- we were having a look around the old castle
oko Samobora	- around Samobor
jeste li gladni?	- are you hungry?

Grammatical explanation

1. The Perfect Tense of the verb *biti* (to be)

infinitive	- biti
infinitive stem	- bi-
past participle	- bi-o, bi-la, bi-lo (s.); bi-li, bi-le, bi-la (pl.)

Affirmative

Singular		Singular	
ja sam bio	bio sam	I was	I have been
ti si bio	bio si	you were	you have been
on je bio	bio je	he was	he has been
ona je bila	bila je	she was	she has been
ono je bilo	bilo je	it was	it has been

Plural		Plural	
mi smo bili	bili smo	we were	we have been
vi ste bili	bili ste	you were	you have been
oni su bili (m.)	bili su	they were	they (m.) have been
one su bile (f.)	bile su	they were	they (f.) have been
ona su bila (n.)	bila su	they were	they (m.) have been

Interrogative

Singular		Singular	
jesam li (ja) bio?	da li sam (ja) bio?	was I?	have I been?
jesi li (ti) bio?	da li si (ti) bio?	were you?	have you been?
je li (on) bio?	da li je (on) bio?	was he?	has he been?
je li (ona) bila?	da li je (ona) bila?	was she?	has she been?
je li (ono) bilo?	da li je (ono) bilo?	was it?	has it been?
Plural		Plural	
jesmo li (mi) bili?	da li smo (mi) bili?	were we?	have we been?
jeste li (vi) bili?	da li ste (vi) bili?	were you?	have you been?
jesu li (oni) bili?	da li su (oni) bili?	were they?	have they been?

Negative

Singular		Singular	
ja nisam bio	nisam bio	I have not been	I was not
ti nisi bio	nisi bio	you have not been	you were not
on nije bio	nije bio	he has not been	he was not
ona nije bila	nije bila	she has not been	she was not
ono nije bilo	nije bilo	it has not been	it was not
Plural		Plural	
mi nismo bili	nismo bili	we have not been	we were not
vi niste bili	niste bili	you have not been	you were not
oni nisu bili	nisu bili	they have not been	they were not

The Perfect Tense is formed from the Short Form of the Present Tense of the verb *biti* (sam, si, je, smo, ste, su) and the active past participle of the verb concerned e.g.

Ja sam bio u kinu, or I have been to the cinema.
 Bio sam u kinu.
 Ja sam posjetio Samobor, or I have visited Samobor.
 Posjetio sam Samobor.

The personal pronoun (ja, ti on, etc.) may be omitted (Bio sam u kinu) but may be included if the speaker wishes to emphasize the person performing the action (Ja sam bio u kinu).

2. The active past participle

The active past participle is formed by adding participial endings to the infinitive base. If the infinitive base ends in a vowel, the following endings are added: *-o, -la, -lo* for the singular, and *-li, -le, -la* for the plural: if the infinitive base ends in a consonant, the following endings are added: *-ao, -la, -lo* for the singular, and *-li, -le, -la* for the plural.

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Singular	-o, -ao	-la	-lo
Plural	-li	-le	-la

So the active past participle of the verb *biti* (to be) is as follows: *bio, bila, bi-li, bi-le, bi-la*, and of the verb *moći* (to be able): *mog-ao, mog-la, mog-lo; mog-li, mog-le, mog-la*. (The infinitive base of the verb *moći* is *mog-*.)

The active past participle has many of the characteristics of the definite adjective. It agrees with its subject in gender (masculine, feminine or neuter) and number (singular, plural) and changes its endings according to its gender.

Singular

Ja *sam bio* u Samoboru. I was in Samobor.
 Ti *si bio* u Samoboru. You were in Samobor.
 John *je bio* u Samoboru. John was in Samobor.
 Jane *je bila* u Samoboru. Jane was in Samobor.
 Vrijeme *je bilo* lijepo. The weather was fine.

Plural

Mi *smo bili* u Samoboru. We were in Samobor.
 Vi *ste bili* u Samoboru. You were in Samobor.
 Oni *su bili* u Samoboru. They were in Samobor.
 One *su bile* u Samoboru. They were in Samobor.
 (Feminine plural)
 Ona *su bila* u Samoboru. They were in Samobor.
 (Neuter plural)

3. The pronouns *one* (they) and *ona* (they)

The pronoun *one* (they) stands for the third person plural feminine:

Zene pričaju. *One* pričaju.
 Women are talking. They are talking.
 Djevojke su bile u Samoboru. *One* su bile u Samoboru.
 The girls were in Samobor. They were in Samobor.

The pronoun *ona* (they) stands for the third person plural neuter:

Djeca vole mlijeko. *Ona* vole mlijeko.
 Children like milk. They like milk.
 Djeca su bila u Samoboru. *Ona* su bila u Samoboru.
 The children were in Samobor. They were in Samobor.

4. The infinitive base

The endings of the infinitive are *-ti* or *-ći* e.g. *bi-ti* (to be), *mo-ći* (to be able).

The infinitive base of the verbs ending in *-ti* is formed by dropping the *-ti* of the infinitive. So the infinitive base of the verb *radi-ti* is *radi-*.

Some verbs ending in *-ći* originally have the infinitive ending in *-ti*. Thus the infinitive of the verb *mo-ći* (to be able) is *mog-ti* but the sounds *-gt* are changed into the sound *-ć* and so we have *moći*. The active past participle of the verb *moći* (to be able) is as follows: *mog-ao, mog-la, mog-lo* (s.) – *mog-li, mog-le, mog-la* (pl.).

The infinitive base of verbs ending in *-ći* may end in *-k, -g, -d*, or *-h*. The real infinitive base of verbs ending in *-ći* may be found by dropping the ending *-u* in the third person plural of the Present Tense. The third person plural of the Present Tense of the verb

moći (to be able) is *mog-u*; by dropping the ending *-u* we get the infinitive base of the verb *moći*: *mog-*.

It is not always easy to be sure of the infinitive base of verbs ending in *-ći*. The active past participle of such verbs should therefore be learned.

5: Verbs with irregular participles

There is a group of verbs which have irregular active past participles. Two of such verbs are *vidjeti* (to see) and *živjeti* (to live). Their active past participles are as follows:

vidjeti: vidio, vidjela, vidjelo (s.) – vidjeli, vidjele, vidjela (pl.)

živjeti: živio, živjela, živjelo (s.) – živjeli, živjele, živjela (pl.)

6. Prepositions (continued)

Preposition *do* (to, as far as, till, until)

132 The preposition *do* is used with the Genitive:

do with the Genitive:

Na putu do »Matice«.
A uskoro putujem od Zagreba do Splita.

On the way to »Matica«.
And very soon I will be travelling from Zagreb to Split.

Bili smo čak do staroga samoborskog grada.

We have even been as far as the old Samobor castle.

Radili su od jutra do večera.

They worked from morning till evening.

(*večera* is the Genitive of the noun *veče*)

Exercises

Put into the interrogative:

(I)

1. Bio sam u Anindolu. Djeca su također bila u Anindolu.
2. Vlak je vozio planinare. Čekali su u redu.

Put into the negative:

(II)

1. Igrao se u parku. Kuhala je objéd.
2. Platilo sam račun. Govorili smo o objedu.
3. Bio sam u Americi. Vidjeli ste Ameriku.
4. Putovali su u Trogir. Živjele su u Slavoniji.

Put into the Perfect Tense:

(III)

1. Ja sam u Samoboru. On je u Zagrebu.
2. Ona živi u Splitu. Mi živimo u Dubrovniku.
3. Vidim prijatelja. Vidimo prostrt stol.
4. Oni razgledaju vrt. On radi u Zadru.
5. Ona ne može hodati. On može pjevati.

Translate into Croatian:

(IV)

1. On the way to the old castle we saw a lot of tourists.
2. She is travelling from Samobor to Zagreb.
3. We have even gone as far as the old Samobor castle.
4. He travelled from morning till evening.
5. She played from morning till evening.

(V)

1. Do you think that the film is good? Yes, I do.
2. Does she think that the film is interesting? No, she does not.
3. Does he act well? Yes, he acts well.
4. Is the film excellent? Yes, the film is excellent.
5. Are you hungry? Yes, I am hungry.
6. Do you want something to eat? Yes, I want something to eat. (Use the verb *htjeti*.)

Translation from Lesson 19:

(I)

1. Jeste li vi iz Amerike?
2. Moja baka nije iz Dalmacije, ona je iz okolice Zagreba.
3. Volite li pjesme iz Hrvatske?
4. Imate li trešnje iz Dalmacije?
5. Želite li vino ili liker iz Dalmacije?

21. vježba (Dvadeset prva vježba)

IZLET U HRVATSKO ŽAGORJE

Mary: *Bili smo* na izletu u Hrvatskom žagorju. *Pöšjetili smo* mnöga mjesta: Stübicu, Stübičke Töplice, Tuheljske Töplice, Zelenjak i Kümrovec. *Bio je* to krásan izlet.

John: U Zelenjaku *je* Antun Mihánović *ispjevao* hrvatsku himnu. Máksim Górkí, glasövití rúski písac, *rekao je* da je hrvatska himna najljepša himna na svijetu. Tájnik »Mätice« *príçao je* o Hrvatima i o hrvatskoj povijesti, a zatim *smo pjevati* hrvatsku himnu. Táta i máma *su plákali*.

Báka: *Bili su* srétni što su öpet u stárom kráju. *Öbjedovali smo* u restoránu u Tuheljskim Töplicama. Támo *je* nékoç *živio* Antun Mihánović. *Jeli smo* ödlična žágorska jela i *pili smo* žágorsko víno.

Jane: *Vidjeli smo* stáre plémiçke küçe – kúrije. U Hrvatskom žagorju nálaži se vèlik broj kúrija.

Mary: *Vözili smo se* novom cèstom kòja se zove Žágorska magistrála. *Svi su rekli* da je Hrvatsko žagorje prèkrasan kráj.

Edward: I svi će öpet pöšjetiti táj kráj. I mi ćemo öpet pöšjetiti Hrvatsko žagorje.

Joseph: Táko je. I našim prijateljima u Amèrici reći ćemo da i öni móraju pöšjetiti Hrvatsko žagorje.
The Perfect Tense is printed in italics.

Words and phrases

dvadeset prva (f.)	– the twenty first
izlet u Hrvatsko žagorje	– an excursion to Croatian Zagorye
bili smo na izletu	– we have been on an excursion
mjesto (n.)	– place
Stubica (f.)	– a small place in Croatian Zagorye where the famous peasants rebellion took place (1573)

toplice (pl.)	– spa
Stubičke toplice (pl.)	– the spa of Stubičke toplice; another well-known spa in Croatian Zagorye
Tuheljske toplice (pl.)	– the spa of Tuheljske toplice; another well-known spa in Croatian Zagorye
Zelenjak (m.)	– Zelenjak; the place in the woods, now a park, where Antun Mihánović, Croatian poet, wrote a poem which later became the Croatian anthem
ispjevati	– to write a poem
(ispjevam)	
himna (f.)	– anthem, hymn
ruski, a, o	– Russian
pisac (m.)	– writer
reći (rečem)	– to say, to tell
najljepši, a, e	– the most beautiful
svijet (m.)	– world
na svijetu	– in the world
rekao je da je hrvatska himna najljepša himna na svijetu	– he said that the Croatian anthem is the most beautiful anthem in the world
povijest (f.)	– history
zatim	– afterwards, then
pjevati (pjevam)	– to sing
plakati (plačem)	– to cry
sretan, a, o	– happy
što	– that
öpet	– again
objedovati	– to have lunch
(objedujem)	
objedovali smo	– we had lunch
nekoç	– once, once upon a time
jesti (jedem)	– to eat
žagorski, a, o	– from Zagorye
jeli smo	– we ate
pili smo	– we drank
plemiçki, a, o	– noble, aristocratic
kurija (f.)	– manor house; old aristocratic house; country house of gentry
nalazi se	– there is
broj (m.)	– number
nalazi se velik broj	– there is a large number
voziti se (vozim se)	– to drive or be driven (in a car, bus, etc.)
vozili smo se Žagorskom magistralom	– we drove along the Zagorye motorway

prekrasan, a, o	- wonderful, exceptionally beautiful, grand, gorgeous
tako	- so
tako je	- that's right, this is so (literal translation)
morati (moram)	- must

Conversational expressions

bili smo na izletu	- we have been on an excursion
na svijetu	- in the world
jeli smo	- we ate
pili smo	- we drank
objedovali smo	- we had lunch
poslije podne	- in the afternoon
tako je	- that's right

Grammatical explanation

1. The use of the Perfect Tense

In Croatian there are several tenses used to express a past action but the Perfect Tense is practically the only past tense used in the spoken language. The Perfect Tense can therefore be said to correspond to all the past tenses in English.

The Perfect Tense can be used for any action that has been completed in the past. It may be translated into English either with the Preterite (The Past Tense) or the Perfect Tense (the Present Perfect) e.g.:

Jučer sam bio u Samoboru. Yesterday I was in Samobor.
Vidio sam odličan film. I have seen an excellent film.

2. The active past participles of the verbs

reći (to say) and *jesti* (to eat)

The third person plural of the verb *reći* is *rek-u*, the active past participle is: *rek-ao*, *rek-la*, *rek-lo* (s) - *rek-li*, *rek-le*, *rek-la* (pl.).

The third person plural of the verb *jesti* is *jed-u*; as the sound *-d* is dropped in the active past participle, we get: *je-o*, *je-la*, *je-lo* (s.) - *je-li*, *je-le*, *je-la* (pl.).

Exercises

The interrogative form of the sentences from Lesson 20: (I)

1. Jesam li bio u Anindolu? (Da li sam bio u Anindolu?) Jesu li djeca također bila u Anindolu? (Da li su djeca također bila u Anindolu?)
2. Je li vlak vozio planinare? (Da li je vlak vozio planinare?) Jesu li čekali u redu? (Da li su čekali u redu?)

The negative form of the sentences from Lesson 20: (II)

1. Nije se igrao u parku. Nije kuhala objed.
2. Nisam platio račun. Nismo govorili o objedu.
3. Nisam bio u Americi. Niste vidjeli Ameriku.
4. Nisu putovali u Trogir. Nisu živjete u Slavoniji.

The Perfect Tense of the sentences from Lesson 20: (III)

1. Ja sam bio u Samoboru. On je bio u Zagrebu.
2. Ona je živjela u Splitu. Mi smo živjeli u Dubrovniku.
3. Vidio sam prijatelja. Vidjeli smo prostrt stol
4. Oni su razgledali vrt. Oni su raditi u Zadru.
5. Ona nije mogla hodati. On nije mogao pjevati.

Translation from Lesson 20:

(IV)

1. Na putu do starog grada vidjeli smo mnogo turista.
2. Ona putuje od Samobora do Zagreba.
3. Bili smo čak do staroga samoborskog grada.
4. Putovao je od jutra do večera.
5. Igrala se od jutra do večera.

(V)

1. Misliš li da je film dobar? Da, mistim.
2. Misli li ona da je film zanimljiv? Ne, ne misli.
3. Glumi li on dobro? Da, on glumi dobro.
4. Je li film odličan? Da, film je odličan.
5. Jeste li gladni? Da, ja sam gladan.
6. Hoćete li nešto jesti? Da, hoću nešto jesti.

22. vježba (Dvadeset druga vježba)

NA BLAGAJNI KAZALIŠTA

Ana: Jësi li rëkao gospòdinu Smithu da sùtra idemo u kazalište?

Stjepan: Dà, rëkao sam *mu*. A jësi li tó rekla gospòdi Smith?*

Ana: Nè, nisam *joj* rekla. Ali *joj* je sigurno rëkao njëzin mùž. Èvo Jòsipa. *On* će kùpiti kárte za kazalište.

Ìvan: Táta, hòcemo li kùpiti kárte za Jane i za Edwarda?

Stjepan: Nàravno, i za *nju* i za *njega*. I *oni* žële vidjeti nàše kazalište. A kùpit ćemo kárte i za *tebe*, za Àntuna i za Màrijju. Èvo i Jòhna, Edwarda i Jane.

Jòsip: Idemo. Idemo autobusom. Do vidënja.

Svi: Do vidënja.

Jane: Gdjë je Hrvatsko národno kazalište?

Ìvan: Mí smo prëd *njim*. Óvo je blagajna. Móramo póći ù red.

Jane: Tkò je òna djevojčica? Štò *ona* óvdje rádi?

Djevojčica: Já kùpujem kárta za *sebe*. Já volim íci u òperu.

Jòsip: Ímate li kárata za »Nikolu Šubića Zrinskog«?

Blagajnica: Ímamo. Kòliko žëlite?

Jòsip: Jedànaest. Jedànaest kárata u parkétu.

Blagajnica: Èvo, izvolite. Kárte kòštaju òsam tisuća dinara.

Jòsip: Hvála. A gdjë je Jane. Nè vidim *je*. A gdjë je Edward? Nè vidim *ga*.

Ìvan: Èvo Edwarda. I Jane je s *njim*.

Edward: Razglédali smo kazalište. Vrlo *nam* se sviđa. Jòhne, sviđa li se kazalište i *tebi*?

John: Dà, sviđa mi se. Vrlo mi se sviđa.

Jòsip: *Mèni se òno* takòder sviđa, a i *Ìvanu*. *Nàma se* òno vrlo sviđa, a i *vàma*.

John: Sùtra ćemo *ga* vidjeti iznutra. Štò će reći *màma* i *tàta*? Hòće li se kazalište svidjeti i *njima*?

The personal pronouns and the reflexive pronoun *sebe* are printed in italics.

Words and phrases

dvadeset druga (f.)	– the twenty second
blagajna (f.)	– box-office
na blagajni	– at the box-office
kazalište (n.)	– theatre
na blagajni kazališta	– at the theatre box-office
sutra (n.)	– tomorrow
rekao sam mu	– I have told him
nisam joj rekla	– I have not told her
kupiti (kupim)	– to buy
karta (f.)	– ticket
hòcemo li kupiti karte	– shall we buy tickets?
i za nju i za njega	– both for him and for her; the conjunction <i>i</i> strengthens the idea that the tickets will be bought both for Jane and Edward
gdje je?	– where is?
Hrvatsko národno kazalište	– Croatian National Theatre
mi smo pred njim	– we are in front of it
moramo u red	– we must queue, we must stand in the line
ja kupujem kartu za sebe	– I am buying a ticket for myself
ja volim íci u operu	– I like to go to the opera
imate li karata?	– have you got tickets?
blagajnica (f.)	– woman-cashier
Nikola Šubić Zrinski	– Nikola Šubić Zrinski, the Croatian national hero who fought the Turks; also the title of the Croatian national opera
koliko žëlite?	– how many (tickets) do you want?
parket (m.)	– stalls
u parketu	– in the stalls
evo, izvolite	– here they are
karte kòštaju osam tisuća dinara	– the tickets cost eight thousand dinars
ne vidim je	– I do not see her
ne vidim ga	– I do not see him
i Jane je s njim	– Jane is with him too
svidati se (svidam se)	– to please, to appeal to
vrlo nam se sviđa	– we like it very much (<i>it</i> stands for the theatre); it appeals to us very much

svida li se kazalište i tebi?	- do you also like the theatre?
svida mi se	- I like it
meni se ono također svida	- I like it too; <i>ono</i> (it) stands for the <i>theatre</i>
nama se ono vrlo svida, a i vama iznutra	- we like it very much, and so do you - inside
sutra ćemo ga vidjeti iznutra	- tomorrow we shall see it from the in- side
hoće li se kazalište svidjeti i njima	- will they also like the theatre

Conversational expressions

na blagajni kaza- zališta	- at the theatre box-office
gdje je?	- where is?
imate li karata?	- have you got tickets?
koliko želite?	- how many do you want?
u parketu	- in the stalls
evo, izvolite	- here you are
vrlo nam se svida	- we like it very much
svida mi se	- I like it

Grammatical explanation

1. Personal pronouns and the reflexive pronoun *sebe* or *se*

The personal pronouns are:

singular:

ja (I), *ti* (thou, you), *on* (he), *ona* (she), *ono* (it)

plural:

mi (we), *vi* (you), *oni* (they m.), *one* (they f.), *ona* (they n.)

The reflexive pronoun is: *sebe* or *se* (self).

2. The declension of personal pronouns and of the pronoun *sebe* or *se*

Singular

N. ja G. mene, <i>me</i> D. meni, <i>mi</i> A. mene, <i>me</i> V. _____ P. meni I. mnom(e)	N. ti G. tebe, <i>te</i> D. tebi, <i>ti</i> A. tebe, <i>te</i> V. ti P. tebi I. tobom	N. _____ G. sebe, <i>se</i> D. sebi, <i>si</i> A. sebe, <i>se</i> V. _____ P. sebi I. sobom
N. on G. njega, <i>ga</i> D. njemu, <i>mu</i> A. njega, <i>ga, nj</i> V. _____ P. njemu I. njim(e)	N. ona G. nje D. njoj, <i>joj</i> A. nju, <i>ju, je</i> V. _____ P. njoj I. njom(e)	N. ono G. njega, <i>ga</i> D. njemu, <i>mu</i> A. njega, <i>ga, nj</i> V. _____ P. njemu I. njim(e)

Plural

N. mi G. nas D. nama, <i>nam</i> A. nâs, <i>nas</i> V. _____ P. nama I. nama	N. vi G. vas D. vama, <i>vam</i> A. vâs, <i>vas</i> V. _____ P. vama I. vama	N. oni, one, ona G. njih, <i>ih</i> D. njima, <i>im</i> A. njih, <i>ih</i> V. _____ P. njima I. njima
--	--	---

The unstressed forms of the personal pronouns are printed in italics.

The declension of the personal pronouns *ja* (I), *ti* (thou), *mi* (we), *vi* (you) and of the reflexive pronoun *sebe* is similar to the declension of feminine nouns ending in *-a* (*žena*).

The declension of the personal pronouns *on* (he), *ona* (she), *ono* (it), *oni* (they m.), *one* (they f.), *ona* (they n.) is similar to the declension of definite adjectives.

Longer and shorter endings appear in the Instrumental singular of some personal pronouns (*ja*, *on*, *ona*, *ono*): *mnome* and *mnom*, *njime* and *njim*, *njome* and *njom*, *njime* and *njim*. The shorter forms are used with prepositions e.g.

I Jane je s njim. Jane is also with him.

Certain cases of personal pronouns (Genitive, Dative and Accusative) have both a stressed (long) and an unstressed (short) form. The unstressed (short) forms of the personal pronouns, also called enclitics, are unaccented words and never begin a sentence e.g.

Ja sam *mu* to rekao. I have told him that.
Nisam *joj* to rekla. I have not told her that.

The stressed (long) forms of the personal pronouns are used:

(I) for emphasis and contrast e.g.

Rekao sam to *njemu* I have told that to him
a ne *njoj*. but not to her.

(II) with prepositions e.g.

Imam karte za *nju* I have got the tickets
i za *njega*. for her and for him.

142 (III) at the beginning of a sentence e.g.

Meni se ona svida. She appeals to me.

The difference between the stressed form of the pronouns *mi* (we) and *vi* (you) in the Genitive and the Accusative (nas, vas), and the unstressed forms of the same pronouns (nás, vás) is only in the accent.

There is a difference in meaning between the stressed and the unstressed form of the personal pronouns. The sentences *On me voli* (He likes me) and *On voli mene* (He likes me) have not the same meaning because in the second sentence the personal pronoun is specially emphasized (*On voli mene* – He likes *me*).

3. The Accusative singular of the personal pronouns *on* and *ona*

The unstressed (short) forms of the Accusative singular of the pronoun *on* are *ga* and *nj*. The form *ga* is used most often e.g.

Vidio sam *ga*. I saw him.

The form *nj* is used after a preposition. In that case the preposition is stressed e.g.

Radio sam za *nj*. I worked for him.

The unstressed (short) forms of the Accusative singular of the pronoun *ona* are *ju* and *je*. The form *je* is used most often e.g.

Vidio sam *je*. I saw her.

The form *ju* is used only after of before the form *je* (the third person singular of the verb *biti*) to avoid ambiguity e.g.

Nije *ju* vidio. He did not see her.

On *ju* je vidio. He saw her.

Tko *ju* je vidio? Who saw her?

4. Prepositions (continued)

The preposition *nasuprot* (opposite, facing)

The preposition *nasuprot* is used with the Dative. Many Croatian-speaking people make the mistake of using the Genitive instead of the Dative with the preposition *nasuprot*.

nasuprot with the Dative:

Nasuprot spomeniku je
kolodvor.

The railway-station is
opposite the monument.

Exercises

Translate into Croatian:

(I)

1. He bought the tickets for himself and not for him.
2. He told me that. She told her that.
3. He saw me in the theatre. She saw him in the line.
4. We talked about you and about them.
5. Would you like to eat with us? (Use the Present Tense of *htjeti*.)

(II)

1. My house is opposite the hotel.
2. Ann was sitting opposite Stjepan.

Replace the personal names with pronouns:
(III)

1. On će kupiti karte za Jane i za Edwarda.
2. Rekao sam to i Johnu i Mariji.
3. Jane voli Johna i Mariju.
4. Oni su razgovarali o Johnu i o Jane.
5. U kazalište ću ići s Marijom i s Edwardom.

23. vježba (Dvadeset treća vježba)

NA ÒPERI U HRVATSKOM NÁRODNOM KÁZALIŠTU

- Joseph:** A gdje je Jane? Tko ju je vidio?
Edward: Éno je támo! Támo su gospòdin i gòspođa Kòvačić, pa Jòsip, Ívan i Màrija. Jane je s njíma.
Mary: Dòbar večer. Kàko ste?
Àna: Dòbar večer. Vílo dòbro. Djèco, gdje ste? Prèdstava pòčinje za pèt minúta.
John: Kázalište je iznutra dívno. U Amèrici su kázališta nòva, a ovo je stáro.
Àna: Dà, zgràda Hrvatskog národnog kázališta je stára. To je bàrokna zgràda.
Jane: Tko je Níkola Šubić Zrìnski?
Stjepan: Ón je hrvatski júnak kòji se bòrio pròtiv Tùraka. Kompòzitor Ívan Zájč komponírao je ò njemu òperu. To je hrvatska nácionalna òpera »Níkola Šubić Zrìnski«.
Àna: Na kráju òpere cijélo kázalište pjèva sa Zrìnskim. Večeras ùlogu Zrìnskoga pjèva Vládimir Rùžđak.
Jane: Àli ón pjèva u Metropòliten òperi u New Yorku.
Àna: Dà, àli ón je iz Zàgreba. Ón je náš čòvjek.
Jane: A hòćete li i ví pjèvati? I gospòdin Kòvačić?
Àna: Dà, i mǎ i náša djèca.
Jane? Tó će bìti prèkrasno. I já ću pjèvati.

Words and phrases

dvadeset treća (f.)	– the twenty third
opera (f.)	– opera
na operi u Hrvatskom narodnom kazalištu	– at the opera in the Croatian National Theatre
tko ju je vidio	– who has seen her
eno je támo	– look, there she is
pa	– and
Jane je s njima	– Jane is with them
kako ste?	– how are you?

vrlo dobro	- very well
predstava (f.)	- performance, show
početi (počinjem)	- begin
minuta (f.)	- minute
za pet minuta	- in five minutes
predstava počinje za pet minuta	- the performance begins in five minutes
barokni, a, o	- baroque
barokna zgrada	- baroque building; a building built in baroque style
junak (m.)	- hero
boriti se (borim se)	- to fight
protiv	- against
Turci (pl.)	- Turks; <i>Turaka</i> is the Genitive of the noun <i>Turci</i>
koji se borio protiv Turaka	- who fought against the Turks
komponirati (komponiram)	- to compose
komponirao je o njemu operu	- composed an opera about him
kraj (m.)	- end
na kraju	- at the end
na kraju opere	- at the end of the opera
uloga (f.)	- role, part
ulogu Zrinskoga pjeva V. R.	- V. R. is singing the part of Zrinski
Metropolitan opera	- Metropolitan Opera House
on pjeva u Metro- politen operi	- he sings in the MET.
on je naš čovjek	- he is from our country; he is our man (literally)
i mi i naša djeca	- both we and our children
to će biti prekrasno	- it will be wonderful

Conversational expressions

kako ste?	- how are you?
vrlo dobro	- very well
za pet minuta	- in five minutes
na kraju	- at the end
on je naš čovjek	- he is from our country
to će biti prekrasno	- it will be wonderful

1. Enclitics

Enclitics are the short forms of personal pronouns and auxiliary verbs. The reflexive »se« and the interrogative particle »li« are also enclitics. Enclitics are not stressed. So far we have learned the following enclitics:

Verbal

Short form of *biti*: *sam, si, je, smo, ste, su*

Short form of *htjeti*: *ću, ćeš, će, ćemo, ćete, će.*

Pronominal

Short Dative of personal

pronouns: *mi, ti, si, mu, joj, nam, vam, im.*

Short Accusative and Genitive of personal

pronouns: *me, te, se, ga, je, ju, nas, vas, ih.*

Reflexive: *se*

Interrogative particle: *li*

2. Order of unstressed personal pronouns

When more than one pronoun is used the Dative precedes the Accusative e.g.

Ona *mi ju je* kupila. She has bought it for me.

If verbal and pronominal enclitics occur together, the verb precedes the pronoun e.g.

Vidio *sam ga* u Samoboru. I saw him in Samobor.
Ja *sam mu* rekao. I told him.

In the negative the pronominal enclitic precedes the verb e.g.

Ja *ga ne* vidim. I do not see him.
Ja *mu nisam* rekao. I did not tell him.

But if the subject (the personal pronoun) is not expressed, the pronominal enclitic follows the verb e.g.

Ne vidim ga. I do not see him.
Nisam mu rekao. I did not tell him.

If the verbal enclitic is *je* (is), it follows the pronoun e.g.

On *mu je* to rekao. He told him that.

Ona *ga je* vidjela. She saw him.

The enclitic *li* precedes other enclitics e.g.

Jesi *li je* vidio? Have you seen her?

Jesi *li ga* vidio? Have you seen him?

The reflexive pronoun *se* follows other pronouns e.g.

Svida *li vam se* kazalište? Do you like the theatre?

Hoće *li vam se* ona

svidjeti?

Will you like her?

3. The personal pronouns and the reflexive pronoun *sebe* used in the context

Unstressed forms

Stressed forms

Ona *me* voli.

Ona voli *mene*.

She likes *me*.

Ja *te* volim.

Ja volim *tebe*.

I like *you*.

Ja *se* perem.

Perem *sebe*.

I am washing *myself*.

Ona *ga* ne voli

Ona ne voli *njega*.

She does not like *him*.

Ja *je* volim.

Ja volim *nju*.

I like *her*.

Oni *nas* ne vole.

Oni ne vole *nas*.

They do not like *us*.

Mi *ih* ne volimo.

Mi ne volimo *njih*.

We do not like *them*.

Unstressed forms

Stressed forms

Ona *mi je* to rekla.

She has told *me* that.

On *ti je* to rekao.

He told *you* that.

Rekao sam *si*.

I told *myself* that.

Ja sam *mu* to rekao.

I told *him* that.

On *joj je* to rekao.

He told that *her*.

Ona *nam je* to rekla.

She told *us* that.

Ona je to rekla *meni*.

She has told that *to me*.

On je to rekao *tebi*.

He told that *to you*.

Rekao sam to *sebi*.

I told that *to myself*.

Ja sam to rekao *njemu*.

I told that *to him*.

On je to rekao *njoj*.

He told that *to her*.

Ona je to rekla *nama*.

She told that *to us*.

Ja sam *vam* to rekao.

I told *you* that.

Mi smo *im* to rekli.

We told *them* that.

On sjedi iza *mene*.

Ona sjedi iza *tebe*.

Ne vidim ništa iza *sebe*.

On ne sjedi iza *njega*.

Mi sjedimo iza *nje*.

Ona ne sjedi iza *nas*.

Mi ne sjedimo iza *vas*.

Vi sjedite iza *njih*.

Razgovarali smo o *meni, tebi, njemu, njoj, nama, vama* i o *njima*.

Govorili su o *sebi*.

Ja govornim *s tobom, s njim* i *s njom*.

Vi govorite sa *mnom*.

On govori sa *sobom*.

Mi govorimo s *vama* i s *njima*.

Vi govorite s *nama*.

Ja sam to rekao *vama*.

I told that *to you*.

Mi smo to rekli *njima*.

We told that *to them*.

He is sitting behind *me*.

She is sitting behind *you*.

I do not see anything behind *me*.

He is not sitting behind *him*.

We are sitting behind *her*.

She is not sitting behind *us*.

We are not sitting behind *you*.

You are sitting behind *them*.

We talked about *me, you, him, her, us, you* and about *them*.

They talked about *themselves*.

I am speaking *to you, to him, and to her*.

You are speaking *to me*.

He is talking *to himself*.

We are speaking *to you* and *to them*.

You are talking *to us*.

4. The reflexive pronoun *sebe* or *se*

The reflexive pronoun *sebe* or *se* is always the same for all persons, all genders and for both singular and plural. It has neither Nominative nor Vocative. Examples:

On *se* pere.

He is washing *himself*.

Oni *se* peru.

They are washing *themselves*.

On je kupio kartu za *sebe*.

He has bought the ticket for *himself*.

Oni su kupili karte za *sebe*.

They have bought the tickets for *themselves*.

On je mislio o *sebi*.

He thought about *himself*.

Oni su mislili o *sebi*.

They thought about *themselves*.

The pronoun *sebe* or *se* (self) corresponds to all English reflexive pronouns when it refers to the subject of the sentence – myself, thyself, himself, herself, itself, ourselves, yourselves, themselves. Examples:

Ne vidim ništa iza <i>sebe</i> .	I do not see anything behind <i>me</i> .
Rekao si to <i>sebi</i> .	You said that to <i>yourself</i> .
Pere <i>se</i> . Pere <i>sebe</i> .	He is washing <i>himself</i> .
Mislimo o <i>sebi</i> .	We are thinking about <i>ourselves</i> .
Radite za <i>sebe</i> .	You are working for <i>yourselves</i> .
Kupuju karte za <i>sebe</i> .	They are buying the tickets for <i>themselves</i> .

Exercises

Translation from Lesson 22:

(I)

1. Kupio je kartu za sebe, a ne za njega.
2. On mi je to rekao. Ona joj je to rekla.
3. Vidio me je u kazalištu. Vidjela ga je u redu.
4. Govorili smo o vama i o njima.
5. Hoćete li jesti s nama.

(II)

1. Moja je kuća nasuprot hotelu.
2. Ana je sjedila nasuprot Stjepanu.

Pronouns replacing personal names from Lesson 22:

(III)

1. On će kupiti karte za nju i za njega.
2. Rekao sam to i njemu i njoj.
3. Ona voli njega i nju.
4. Oni su razgovarali o njemu i o njoj.
5. U kazalište ću ići s njim i s njom.

24. vježba (Dvadeset četvrta vježba)

ŠÉTNJA GÓRNJIM GRÁDOM

Ana: Ovo je trg Zrinjevac, a nédaleko je Trg Repùblike. Tàmo je Ìlica, jédna od *nájstarijih* i *nájljepših* ùlica u Zàgrebu.

Edward: Nèboder je *nájviša* zgràda na Trgu Repùblike.

Jòsip: To je *nòvija* zgràda, sàgrađena nédavno.

Jane: Màma, štò je tó? Johne, vidiš li ónaj plàvi tràmvaj.

Stjepan: Tó nije tràmvaj, nègo zàgrebačka uspinjača. Tó je nàša turistička atrakcija. Povèzimo se uspinjačom.

Jane: Tàta, kàrte su na uspinjači *jeftinije* nègo u tràmva-ju. Glè, vèc smo u Górnjem gràdu.

Mary: Pògled je s Górnjega gràda prèkrasan. Óvdje je at-
mosfèra *romantičnija* nègo u pričì.

Jane: Edwarde, vidiš li divnu kùću. Óva kùća óvdje *ljèpša* je nègo óna tàmo.

Jòsip: Jane, tó nije óbìčna kùća, tó je pàlača.

Edward: A óva je kùća *viša* od óstalih.

Ìvan: Tó nije kùća, tó je stàra kùla »Lotrščák«.

Ana: Zà mene je óvo *nájdraži* dío Zàgreba. Óvdje su nàše stàre institùcije, prvo zàgrebačko kazalište, pàlače, cirkve, galèrije. Óvo je Màrkov trg; s dèsne je strà-
ne Sàbor, a s lijeve su Bànski dvóri. Bànski su dvóri nèkadašnje sjedište hrvatskog bàna, a sàda su sjè-
dište vlàde Repùblike Hrvatske.

Edward: Jè li Zàgreb *stàriji* od New Yorka?

Mary: Slušajte, djèco! Zàgreb se spòminje 1093. gòdine, a Amèrika je otkrivena tèk 1492. gòdine. Zèmlja vâ-
ših ròditelja, stàri kràj, ìma *stàrije* i *bogàtije* kultúr-
no nàsljede nègo mnòge druge zèmlje.

Stjepan: Óvo je atèlje *nájpoznatijega* hrvatskog kipara, Ìvana Mèštrovíća. Ón je ràdio i u Amèrici, a svòje atèl-
jèe u Zàgrebu i u Splítu poklònio je hrvatskom nà-
rodu.

Jòsip: Sàd se sjècam. Kipovi »Indijanaca« u Grant Cen-
tral Parku u Chicagu djèlo su Ìvana Mèštrovíća. Iz-
vòlite úći u atèlje.

The comparatives and the superlatives are printed in italics.

Words and phrases

152	<p>dvadeset četvrta (f.) – the twenty fourth</p> <p>šetnja (f.) – walk</p> <p>gornji, a, e – upper</p> <p>šetnja Gornjim gradom – a walk in the Upper town</p> <p>Zrinjevac (m.) – Zrinjevac, name of a square in Zagreb</p> <p>Ilica (f.) – Ilica, name of a street in Zagreb</p> <p>jedna od – one of</p> <p>ulica (f.) – street</p> <p>neboder (m.) – skyscraper</p> <p>visok, a, o – tall, high</p> <p>nedavno – recently, lately</p> <p>sagrađen, a, o – built</p> <p>vidjeti (vidim) – to see</p> <p>vidiš li? – can you see?</p> <p>uspinjača (f.) – funicular</p> <p>turistički, a, o – tourist</p> <p>atrakcija (f.) – attraction</p> <p>povezti se (povezem se) – take for a ride (drive)</p> <p>povezimo se uspinjačom – let's go by funicular</p> <p>gle – look</p> <p>već – already</p> <p>gle, već smo u Gornjem gradu – look, we are in the Upper town already</p> <p>pogled s Gornjega grada – a view from the Upper town</p> <p>atmosfera (f.) – atmosphere</p> <p>priča (f.) – story, fable, table</p> <p>običan, a, o – ordinary, usual</p> <p>palača (f.) – palace</p> <p>ostali – the others, the rest</p> <p>ova je kuća viša od ostalih – this house is higher than the others</p> <p>kula (f.) – tower</p> <p>drag, a, o – dear, favourite</p> <p>dio (m.) – part</p> <p>za mene je ovo najdraži dio Zagreba – it's my favourite part of Zagreb</p> <p>institucija (f.) – institution</p> <p>crkva (f.) – church</p> <p>galerija (f.) – gallery</p> <p>Markov trg (m.) – St. Mark's Square</p> <p>desni, a, o – right-hand</p>
-----	--

<p>strana (f.)</p> <p>s desne strane</p> <p>Sabor (m.)</p> <p>lijevi, a, o</p> <p>s lijeve (strane)</p> <p>ban (m.)</p> <p>banski, a, o</p> <p>dvor (m.)</p> <p>Banski dvori</p> <p>nekadašnji, a, e</p> <p>sjedište (n.)</p> <p>vlada (f.)</p> <p>republika (f.)</p> <p>slušajte, djeco</p> <p>spominje se</p> <p>devedeset</p> <p>treći, a, e</p> <p>tisuću devedeset i treće (godine) or 1093.</p> <p>otkriven</p> <p>tek</p> <p>četiristo or četiri stotine</p> <p>stotina (f.)</p> <p>drugi, a, o</p> <p>tisuću četiristo devedeset i druge (godine) or 1492.</p> <p>zemlja (f.)</p> <p>kulturni, a, o</p> <p>nasljeđe (n.)</p> <p>mnogi, a, o</p> <p>drugi, a, o</p> <p>o go mnoge druge zemlje</p> <p>atelje (m.)</p> <p>kipar (m.)</p> <p>svoj, a, e</p> <p>pokloniti (poklanjam)</p> <p>narod (m.)</p> <p>sjećati se (sjećam se)</p>	<p>– side</p> <p>– on the right-hand side</p> <p>– Assembly, Parliament</p> <p>– left</p> <p>– on the left-hand side</p> <p>– governor; ban – title of the governor of Croatia in Austrian times</p> <p>– governor's, ban's</p> <p>– court, castle; <i>dvori</i> is the plural of the noun <i>dvor</i> and means <i>court, palace</i></p> <p>– the Governor's Palace</p> <p>– former, sometime</p> <p>– seat</p> <p>– government</p> <p>– republic</p> <p>– listen, children</p> <p>– is mentioned</p> <p>– ninety</p> <p>– third</p> <p>– 1093</p> <p>– discovered</p> <p>– only, not earlier than, not until</p> <p>– four hundred</p> <p>– a hundred</p> <p>– the second</p> <p>– 1492</p> <p>– country, native country</p> <p>– cultural</p> <p>– tradition</p> <p>– many</p> <p>– other</p> <p>– than many other countries</p> <p>– sculptor's studio; <i>atelje</i> is the plural Accusative of <i>atelje</i></p> <p>– sculptor</p> <p>– his</p> <p>– to give as gift, to donate, to present</p> <p>– people</p> <p>– to remember</p>
---	---

kip (m.)	- sculpture
Indijanac (m.)	- Red Indian
djelo (n.)	- work, product, creation, work of art

Conversational expressions

pogled s Gornjega grada	- a view from the Upper town
slušajte, djeco	- listen, children
izvolite ući u atelje	- please come into the studio

Grammatical explanation

1. Assimilation caused by j

The sound *j* affects many consonants preceding it e.g.

d + j = đ	mlad + ji	= mlađi (younger)
t + j = ć	žut + ji	= žući (yellowier)
k + j = č	jak + ji	= jači (stronger)
g + j = ž	drag + ji	= draži (dearer)
s + j = š	pis + jem	= pišem ((I write)
z + j = ž	brz + ji	= brži (quicker)
h + j = š	tih + ji	= tiši (calmer)
n + j = nj	crn + ji	= crnji (blackier)
p + j = plj	skup + ji	= skuplji (more expensive)
b + j = blj	grub + ji	= grublji (coarser)
m + j = mlj	hram + jem	= hramljem (I limp)
v + j = vlj	ulov + jen	= ulovljen (caught)

2. The adjective stem

The adjective stem is formed by dropping the Genitive singular ending from the indefinite masculine adjective e.g. N. mlad, G. mlad-a. So the adjective stem of the adjective mlad, a o (young) is *mlad-*. The adjective stem is specially important for adjectives with the mobile *-a*.

3. The comparative

The comparative is formed by adding the endings *-iji*, *-ji*, and *-ši* to the adjective stem or to the indefinite adjective in the Nominative.

A.

Most adjectives form the comparative by adding *-iji* (m.), *-ija* (f.), *-ije* (n.). They are monosyllabic adjectives, bisyllabic adjectives which do not end in *-ak*, *-ok*, *-ek*, and almost all polysyllabic adjectives e.g.

Positive	Comparative		
	m.	f.	n.
star (old)	stariji	starija	starije
nov (new)	noviji	novija	novije
pun (full)	puniji	punija	punije
crven (red)	crveniji	crvenija	crvenije
jeftin (cheap)	jeftiniji	jeftinija	jeftinije
hladan (cold)	hladniji	hladnija	hladnije
zanimljiv (interesting)	zanimljiviji	zanimljivija	zanimljivije
elegantan (elegant)	elegantniji	elegantnija	elegantnije
popularan (popular)	popularniji	popularnija	popularnije

B.

The adjectives forming the comparative by adding the endings *-iji* (m.), *-ija* (f.), *-ije* (n.) are:

a) most monosyllabic adjectives with a long vowel e.g.

Positive	Comparative			
		m.	f.	n.
jak	jak-ji	jači	jača	jače (stronger)
drag	drag-ji	draži	draža	draže (dearer)

b) bisyllabic adjectives mostly ending in *-ak*, *-ok*, *-ek*. These endings are dropped before adding *-ji*, *-ja*, *-je*. Assimilation then takes place e.g.

Positive	Comparative	
kratak (short)	krat + ji = kraći, a, e (shorter)	t + j = ć
vis-ok (high)	vis + ji = viši, a, e (higher)	s + j = š
dal-ek (far)	dal + ji = dalji, a, e (farther)	l + j = lj

C.

Only three adjectives form their comparatives by adding the endings *-ši* (m.), *-ša* (f.), *-še* (n.). They are:

	n.	f.	n.	
lak (light)	lakši	lakša	lakše	lighter
lijep (beautiful)	lijepši	lijepša	lijepše	more beautiful
mek (soft)	mekši	mekša	mekše	softer

4. The superlative

The superlative is formed by adding the prefix *-naj* to the comparative e.g.

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
star (old)	stariji (older)	najstariji (the oldest)
hladan (cold)	hladniji (colder)	najhladniji (the coldest)
popularan (popular)	popularniji (more popular)	najpopularniji (the most popular)
jak (strong)	jači (stronger)	najjači (the strongest)
kratak (short)	kraći (shorter)	najkraći (the shortest)
lak (light)	lakši (lighter)	najlakši (the lightest)

5. Irregular adjectives

Some adjectives form their comparatives and superlatives irregularly. The most common of these are:

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
dobar (good)	bolji (better)	najbolji (the best)
zao (bad)	gori (worse)	najgori (the worst)
velik (large, big)	veći (larger)	najveći (the largest)
malen (small)	manji (smaller)	najmanji (the smallest)

6. The declension of the comparative and the superlative

The declension of the comparative and the superlative is equal to the declension of definite adjectives. All the endings of this declension are long.

7. Than after a comparative or superlative

The comparative is followed most frequently by *nego* (than) or *no* (than) followed by the Nominative or *od* (than) followed by the Genitive, e.g.

Ova je kuća ljepša *nego* ona (kuća).
Ova je kuća ljepša *no* ona (kuća).
Ova je kuća ljepša *od* one (kuće).

This house is
nicer than that
one.

8. Prepositions (continued)

Preposition *s, sa* (with)

The preposition *s, sa* is used with the Genitive and the Instrumental. It has the form of *sa* in front of the consonants *s, š, z, ž*.

To su čevapčići *sa* sirovim izrezanim lukom.

These are čevapčići with raw chopped onions.

Tko je onaj starac *sa* štapom?

Who is that old man with a walking-stick.

s with the Genitive:

S desne je strane Sabor, a *s* lijeve su Banski dvori.

The Parliament is on the right-hand side and the Governor's Palace on the left-hand side.

s with the Instrumental:

Gospođa *s* bijelim mačkom je Engleskinja.

The lady with a white cat is an Englishwoman.

Ovo su ploče *s* pjesmama iz Slavonije i Dalmacije.

These are records with songs from Slavonia and Dalmatia.

Mi volimo limunadu *s* ledom.

We like lemonade with ice.

Put the following adjectives into the comparative and superlative:

(I)

umoran, a, o; divan, a, o; lijep, a, o; udoban, a, o.

Translate into Croatian (use the preposition *od*):

(II)

1. Joseph is older than Mary.
2. Milk is cheaper than wine.
3. The palace is more beautiful than the house.
4. The tower is higher than the palace.
5. Jane is better than Edward.

25. vježba (Dvadeset peta vježba)

VÒŽNJA JADRANSKOM MAGISTRÁLOM

- Joseph:** Djèco, *željeli bismo* da vidite hrvatsku obalu. Da imamo vrèmena, *pòsjetili bismo* i otoke.
- Mary:** Dòsad smo pòsjetili Istru i Hrvatsko primorje, a sàd smo vèc u Dalmaciji. Vidjeli smo Pòreç, Ròvinj, Opàtiju, Pùlu, Rijèku, Zàdar, Šibenik i Trògir, a prèd nama je Split. *Hjèli bismo* da vidite ljepòte stàroga kràja, a i bògato kùlturno nàsljeđe zèmlje vàših ròditelja.
- John:** Da imam nòvaca, *pùtovao* bih po cijèloj zèmlji. Tò je nàjljepša zèmlja kòju sam vidio. *Bi li pùtovala* sà mnom, Jane?
- Jane:** Vrlo ràdo, Johne!
- Ivan:** *I ja bih pùtovao* s vama, Johne. A i Edward.
- Jane:** Màmà, hòcemo li jòš snimati? *Željela bih* da mòje prijateljice vide kàko je lijèpa zèmlja mòjih ròditelja.
- Mary:** Hòcemo, àli sàd se žùrimo ù Split. Žèlimo što prije vidjeti nàše dràge ròdake. Oni nas željno čekaju. Zàtim idemo u Dùbrovnik. *Nè bismo hjèli* zàkasnitì na otvorenje Dùbrovaèkog festivàla. U Dùbrovniku su nàši prijatelji iz Zàgreba.
- Joseph:** Hèj, djècaèe! Kàmo vòdi òva cèsta? Ù Split?
- Dječak:** Dà, ràvno ù Split.
- Joseph:** Hvalà lijèpa.

The forms of the Present Conditional are printed in italics.

Words and phrases

- | | |
|-------------------------------|--|
| dvadeset peta (f.) | - the twenty fifth |
| vožnja (f.) | - drive, ride |
| vožnja Jadranskom magistralom | - a drive along the Adriatic coast road |
| željeli bismo da vidite | - we would like you to see, we want you to see |

da	- if
otok (m.)	- island
da imamo vremena	- if we had time
dosad	- up to now, so far
Istra (f.)	- Istra, a peninsula in the north of Croatia
Hrvatsko primorje (n.)	- The Croatian Littoral, the northern part of the Adriatic
pred nama	- in front of us
htjeli bismo	- we would like
ljepota (f.)	- beauty
da imamo novaca	- if we had money
cijel, a, o	- whole
po cijeloj zemlji	- through the whole country
koji, a, e	- which
najljepša zemlja koju sam vidio	- the most beautiful country I have seen
sa mnom	- with me
vrlo rado	- very gladly, very much, with pleasure
snimati (snimam)	- to shoot
hoćemo li još snimati?	- are we going to shoot more?
žuriti se (žurim se)	- to hurry, to be in a hurry
što prije	- very soon, as soon as possible
željno	- anxiously, eagerly
zatim	- after that
ići (idem)	- to go
zakasniti (zakasnim)	- to be late
ne bismo htjeli zakasniti	- we would not like to be late
otvorenje (n.)	- opening
dubrovački, a, o	- from Dubrovnik
festival (m.)	- festival
Dubrovački festival	- the Dubrovnik festival, the well-known summer festival of music and drama held in Dubrovnik every year
dječak (m.)	- boy
hej, dječaće	- listen, boy; hello, boy
kamo	- where, in which direction
cesta (f.)	- motorway, road, highway
kamo vodi ova cesta?	- which way does this road go, where does this road lead?
ravno	- straight, in direction of
ravno u Split	- straight to Split

Conversational expressions

po cijeloj zemlji	- through the whole country
sa mnom	- with me
vrlo rado	- very gladly
što prije	- very soon, as soon as possible

Grammatical explanation

1. The Present Conditional

Affirmative

Singular		Singular
ja bih kupio	kupio bih	I should (would) buy
ti bi kupio	kupio bi	you would buy
on bi kupio	kupio bi	he would buy
ona bi kupila	kupila bi	she would buy
ono bi kupilo	kupilo bi	it would buy
Plural		Plural
mi bismo kupili	kupili bismo	we should (would) buy
vi biste kupili	kupili biste	you would buy
oni bi kupili	kupili bi	they would buy
one bi kupile	kupile bi	they would buy
ona bi kupila	kupila bi	they would buy

The Present Conditional is formed from the Aorist Tense of the verb *biti* (to be) used as an auxiliary (bih, bi, bi; bismo, biste, bi) and the active past participle of the verb concerned.

Interrogative

Singular		Singular
da li bih (ja) kupio?	bih li (ja) kupio?	should (would) I buy?
da li bi (ti) kupio?	bi li (ti) kupio?	would you buy?
da li bi (on) kupio?	bi li (on) kupio?	would he buy?
da li bi (ona) kupila?	bi li (ona) kupila?	would she buy?
da li bi (ono) kupilo?	bi li (ono) kupilo?	would it buy?

Plural		Plural
da li bismo (mi) kupili	bismo li (mi) kupili?	should (would) we buy?
da li biste (vi) kupili?	biste li (vi) kupili?	would you buy?
da li bi (oni) kupili?	bi li (oni) kupili?	would they buy?
da li bi (one) kupile?	bi li (one) kupile?	would they buy?
da li bi (ona) kupila?	bi li (ona) kupila?	would they buy?

The interrogative Present Conditional is formed by putting the particle *da li* before the Aorist auxiliary (*da li bi ti kupio?*) or by putting the particle *li* immediately after the Aorist auxiliary (*biste li vi kupili?*).

Negative

Singular	Singular
(ja) ne bih kupio (ti) ne bi kupio (on) ne bi kupio (ona) ne bi kupila (ono) ne bi kupilo	I should (would) not buy you would not buy he would not buy she would not buy it would not buy
Plural	Plural
(mi) ne bismo kupili (vi) ne biste kupili (oni) ne bi kupili (one) ne bi kupile (ona) ne bi kupila	we would not buy you would not buy they would not buy they would not buy they would not buy

The negative form of the Present Conditional is formed by putting the particle *ne* immediately before the Aorist auxiliary.

2. Prepositions (continued)

Preposition *kraj* (near, beside)

The preposition *kraj* is used with the Genitive.

kraj with the Genitive:

Kraj zgrade je nova koncertna dvorana. There is a new concert-hall near the building.

Kraj Samobora će se održati iseljenički piknik. The emigrants' picnic will be held near Samobor.

Translate into Croatian:

(I)

- I would like to visit Split.
- We would like to live in Trogir.
- Would you like to travel with us?
- Would you go (f.) to the cinema if you had money?
- I would not like to be late for the opening of the festival.

(II)

- The Emigrants' picnic will be held near Samobor.
- Will Joseph, Ivan and Antun be there?
- Grandmother will be at the picnic too.
- She will bring lunch and dinner (supper) in the basket.
- This will be a real national party (merry-making).

Put the pronouns in brackets into the correct case endings:

(III)

- John sjedi iza (ja)
- On je to rekao On je to rekao. (ti)
- Ona voli Ono umiva. (sebe)
- Razgovarali smo o Govorili smo i o (vi, oni)
- U kazalište idem s U operu idem i s i s (vi, ona, on)

The comparatives and the superlatives of the adjectives from Lesson 24:

(I)

umorniji, a, e – najumorniji, a, e; divniji, a, e – najdivniji, a, e; ljepši, a, e – najljepši, a, e; udobniji, a, e – najudobniji, a, e.

Translation from Lesson 24:

(II)

- Josip je stariji od Marije.
- Mlijeko je jeftinije od vina.
- Palača je ljepša od kuće.
- Kula je viša od palače.
- Jane je bolja od Eduarda.

26. vježba (Dvadeset šesta vježba)

HRVATSKA BRÄTSKA ZÄJEDNICA

Mary: *Pögleđala sam ù nebo, pögleđala sam ù more, pögleđala sam ù gore, a zätim sam poljúbila svéto tlo gdje sam se röđila.*

Tëtka: *Drági möji röđaci, vesélimo se vašem dölkasku. İma-te slätku djëcu. Ja...*

Stric: *Tëtka se toliko razveselila da je zäplakala od srëće.*

Tëtka: *Niste zaböravili stári kräj.*

Joseph: *Nismo. U Amërici mislimo na stári kräj. İmamo organizäciju »Hrvatska brätska zäjednica«. Organizäcija »Hrvatska zäjednica« osnovana je 1894. gödine, a 1926. döbila je ime »Hrvatska brätska zäjednica«. İmamo i službeno gläsilo. Öno je 1904. gödine nazvano »Zäjedničar«. Za djëcu naših iseljenika osnovan je 1915. gödine Pödmładak zäjednice, a 1939. ödržana je Prva konvencija Pödmłatka. John, Edward i Jane članovi su Pödmłatka.*

Tëtka: *To je döbro. Právi röđoljub në smije zaböraviti svö-ju zëmłju.*

Joseph: *Käda möžemo, pömažemo svöjoj dömovini.*

Stric: *A šada ćemo zäpjevati jëdnu pjësmu.*

MÄRICE DİVOJKO

*Märice divojko, göspodskoga röda,
Tí ne përi rúblje kraj möjega bröda.*

*Máni se ti mëne i möjega röda,
Já ću präti rúblje gdje je mëne völja.*

*Äko si göspödar od svöjega bröda
Tí nisi göspödar od sinjega möra.*

The perfective aspect of the verbs from this lesson is printed in italics; the words in which voicing or unvoicing of the consonants took place are also printed in italics.

Words and phrases

dvadeset šesta (f.)	– the twenty sixth
bratski, a, o	– fraternal
zajednica (f.)	– union
Hrvatska bratska zajednica	– Croatian Fraternal Union
pogledati (pogledam)	– to have a look
nebo (n.)	– sky
gora (f.)	– mountain
zatim	– then
a zatim	– and then
poljubiti (poljubim)	– to kiss
svet, a, o	– holy
tlo (n.)	– ground
gdje sam se rodila	– where I was born
tetka (f.)	– aunt
veseliti se (veselim se)	– to rejoice
sladak, a, o	– sweet, nice
stric (m.)	– uncle
razveseliti se (razveselim se)	– to cheer up, to gladden, to be delighted
zaplakati (zaplachem)	– to burst into tears
sreća (f.)	– happiness
zaboraviti (zaboravim)	– to forget
organizacija (f.)	– organization
osnovati (osnivam)	– to found, to set up, to establish
tisuću osam stotina devedeset i četvrte godine or 1894.	– 1894
tisuću devet stotina dvadeset i šeste godine or 1926.	– 1926
dobiti (dobijem)	– to get, to obtain
služben, a, o	– official
glasilo (n.)	– organ, party paper
tisuću devet stotina i četvrte godine or 1904.	– 1904
nazvati (nazovem)	– to name, to call, to get a name
nazvan, a, o	– named, called
ono je nazvano	– it was called (named)
Zajedničar (m.)	– <i>Zajedničar</i> is the name of a paper; as a word <i>zajedničar</i> (m.) denotes a member of a union (community); fraternalist
tisuću devet stotina i petnaesete godine or 1915.	– 1915

podmladak (m.)	- progeny, issue, young people; here the name of the youth organization
tisuću devet stotina trideset i devete or 1939.	- 1939
održati (održim)	- to be held
konvencija (f.)	- convention
član (m.)	- member
prav, a, o	- real, genuine
rodoljub (m.)	- patriot
smjeti (smijem)	- to be allowed, to dare, ought
ne smije	- ought not
pomagati (pomažem)	- to help
zapjevati (zapjevam)	- to start singing
pjesma (f.)	- song
'divojko	- the vocative of <i>divojka</i> (f.), the dialect form of <i>djevojka</i> (girl)
gospodski, a, o	- noble, high, aristocratic
rod (m.)	- descent, birth
prati (perem)	- to wash
ti ne peri	- don't (you) wash
rublje (n.)	- linen, clothes
kraj	- near
brod (m.)	- boat, ship
maniti se nekoga	- colloquially: leave somebody alone, in peace
mani se ti mene	- leave me alone
volja (f.)	- wish
ako	- if
gospodar (m.)	- master
svoj, a, e	- your
sinji, a, e	- blue

The song MARIČE DIVOJKO in English

O, Mary, girl, of noble birth,
Do not wash your linen near my boat.

Leave me alone, me and my birth,
I will wash my linen where I want.

If you are the master of your boat,
You are not the master of the blue sea.

Conversational expressions

zatim	- then
a zatim	- and then
ono je nazvano	- it was called (named)
ne smije	- ought not

Grammatical explanation

1. Verbal aspect

The Croatian language is different from the other West European languages in one very important thing: its distinguishing characteristic is the verbal aspect or way of considering verbal meaning. Verbs in Croatian not only denote verbal action or verbal status, as in English, but they also indicate whether the action is still in progress or whether it has been completed.

This means that in Croatian almost every verb exists in two forms or aspects: imperfective and perfective. For instance, the two forms of the verb *gledati* (to look, to have a look) are: *gledati* (imperfective) and *pogledati* (perfective). The imperfective form expresses an action which is still in progress while the perfective form expresses an action which has been completed or which is limited. Examples:

Imperfective	Perfective
Gledala je u nebo. She was looking at the sky.	Pogledala je u nebo. She had a look at the sky.
Oni su se ljubili. They were kissing each other.	On ju je poljubio. He kissed her.
Plakala je cijeli dan. She was crying the whole day.	Zaplakala je od sreće. She burst into tears with happiness.
Pjevali su lijepo pjesme. They were singing nice songs.	Zapjevali su lijepu pjesmu. They began to sing a nice song.

2. Imperfective and perfective verbs

Some imperfective verb may become perfective by means of a prefix. The imperfective verbs express an action that is being repeated.

Imperfective	Perfective
gledati (to look at)	po-gledati (to have a look)
veseliti se (to be happy, to rejoice)	raz-veseliti se (to become happy)
plakati (to cry)	za-plakati (to burst out crying)
zvati se (to have a name)	na-zvati (to get a name)
pjevati (to sing)	za-pjevati (to start singing)

Perfective verbs may become imperfective by prolonging or changing the root of the word with the following vowels or infixes: *a, iva, ova, aja, ija*. Examples:

Perfective	Imperfective
sjediti (to sit)	sjedati (to sit often)
osnovati (to set up)	osnivati (to set up often)
kupiti (to buy)	kupovati (to buy often)
ustati (to get up)	ustajati (to get up often)
probiti (to break through)	probijati (to break through often)

3. Voiced and unvoiced consonants

In Croatian we have voiced and unvoiced (voiceless) consonants. Voiced consonants have their unvoiced equivalents (except *j, l, lj, r, m, n* and *nj*); unvoiced consonants have their voiced equivalents (except *h* and *c*).

Voiced	b	d	v	g	d	dž	ž	z			l	r	m	n	j	lj	nj
Unvoiced	p	t	f	k	ć	č	š	s	c	h							

Practical rule: During the production of voiced consonants our vocal cords vibrate.

4. Consonantal changes

When two or more voiced and unvoiced consonants come together, voicing or devoicing of consonants takes place. This means that all the consonants in the cluster of consonants become »voiced« or »unvoiced« according to the last consonant e.g.

Englez – englezki	– engleski (Englishman, English)
sladak – sladki	– slatki (sweet)

težak – težki	– teški (difficult)
narezak – narezci	– naresci (cold cut, cold cuts)
dolazak – dolazka	– dolaska (arrival, gen. s.)
podmladak – podmladka	– podmlatka (progeny, young people)
svat – svatba	– svadba (wedding guest, wedding)

In the first example – englezki – the sound *z* is voiced and the sound *k* is unvoiced. According to the above rule, the voiced sound *z* is changed into its unvoiced counterpart *s*: engleski.

In the last example – svatba – the sound *t* is unvoiced and the sound *b* is voiced. According to the above rule, the sound *t* is changed into its voiced counterpart *d*: svadba.

Remember: *the change (mutation) takes place according to the last consonant.*

Exercises

Translate into Croatian:

(I)

1. He was looking at the sea.
2. He had a look at the room.
3. She was weeping with unhappiness.
4. She burst into tears of joy.
5. She always forgets everything.
6. He forgot to kiss her.
7. They were singing the whole day.
8. They started singing a beautiful song.

Translation from Lesson 25:

(I)

1. Želio bih posjetiti Split.
2. Željeli bismo živjeti u Trogiru.
3. Biste li željeli s nama putovati?
4. Bi li išla u kino da imaš novaca?
5. Ne bih htio zakasnuti na otvorenje festivala.

(II)

1. Iseljenički piknik održat će se kraj Samobora.
2. Hoće li tamo biti Josip, Ivan i Antun?
3. I baka će biti na pikniku.
4. Ona će objed i večeru donijeti u košari.
5. To će biti pravo narodno veselje.

The pronouns from Lesson 25 in the correct case endings:

(I)

1. John sjedi iza mene.
2. On je to rekao tebi. On ti je to rekao.
3. Ona voli sebe. Ono se umiva.
4. Razgovarali smo o vama. Govorili smo o njima.
5. U kazalište idem s vama. U operu idem i s njom i s njim.

27. vježba (Dvadeset sedma vježba)

DUBROVNIK

- Joseph:** Mary, *podimo* na dubrovačke zidine. Jöhne, *idi* po Edwarda, *neka* i on *ide* s nama.
- Mary:** *Idi* i po Jane, *neka* i *ona ide*. Evo ih već dolaze.
- Jane:** Mäma, danas poslije podne išli bismo na kupanje. Kupanje je u Dubrovniku divno – móre je toplije nego u Opätiji.
- Mary:** Dänas në. Dänas je otvorenje Dubrovačkog festivala. Glümci će biti obučeni u dubrovačke nošnje. Evo naših prijatelja. Döbro jütro!
- Stjepan:** Döbro jütro! Käko ste? Käko vam se sviđa Dubrovnik?
- Mary:** Tö je sigurno jëdan od najljepših gradova na svijetu. *Rëcite* nam nešto ö njemu.
- Stjepan:** Däkle, *slüsajte!* Dubrovnik je ösnovan 416. gödine. Bio je slöbodan do 1808. – täda je Napolëon ökinuo Dubrovačku republiku. Dubrovnik je imao bögatu trgovinu, kultüru i ömjetnost. Osöbito je pöznapata stära dubrovačka književnost. Na festivalu se prikäzuju i djëla dubrovačkih pisaca.
- Ana:** Dubrovnik je pün starina i külturnih spömenika – cikava, pälača, galërija, dvörova. Zövu ga: hrvatska Atëna.
- Stjepan:** Dubrovnik je ljëti najposjećeniji grad u zemlji. Tisuce türista iz cijëloga svijëta dolaze da ga pösjete.
- Mary:** Djëco, *ëekajte!* Në *idite* sämi na zidine. *Podimo svi* zajedno.

The forms of the imperative are printed in italics.

Words and phrases

- | | |
|---------------------|---|
| dvadeset sedma (f.) | – the twenty seventh |
| poći (podem) | – to go, to set off |
| podimo | – let's go |
| Dubrovnik (m.) | – Dubrovnik, a town in Croatia in the southern Adriatic |

zidine (m. pl.)	- the walls
pođimo na dubrovačke zidine	- let's go to see the Dubrovnik walls; let's go on the Dubrovnik walls (literal translation)
idi po Edwarda	- go and fetch Edward
evo ih, već dolaze	- here they are coming
poslije podne	- in the afternoon
kupanje (n.)	- swimming, bathing
išli bismo na kupanje	- we would like to go swimming, bathing
obučen, a, o	- dressed
kako ste?	- how are you?
kako vam se sviđa Dubrovnik?	- how do you like Dubrovnik?
na svijetu	- in the world
nešto	- something
recite nam nešto o njemu	- tell us something about it
dakle	- then, hence, therefore
dakle, slušajte	- listen then
četiristo šesnaeste	- 416
osamsto ili osam stotina	- eight hundred
tisuću osam stotina i osme	- 1808
tada	- then
ukinuti (ukinem)	- abolish
Napoleon je ukinuo Dubrovačku republiku	- Napoleon abolished the Dubrovnik Republic
bogat, a, o	- rich
trgovina (f.)	- trade
kultura (f.)	- culture
umjetnost (f.)	- art
osobito	- specially
književnost (f.)	- literature
prikazivati se (prikazujem se)	- to perform
starina (f.)	- antique
pun starina i kulturnih spomenika	- full of antiques and cultural monuments
zovu ga	- it is called
Atena (f.)	- Athens
hrvatska Atena	- the Croatian Athens
ljeti	- in summer
posjećen, a, o	- visited
iz cijeloga svijeta	- from all over the world
doći (dolazim)	- to come

sam, a, o	- alone
zajedno	- together
svi zajedno	- all together

Conversational expressions

poslije podne	- in the afternoon
kako ste?	- how are you?
na svijetu	- in the world
svi zajedno	- all together

Grammatical explanation

1. The imperative

The imperative is used in the second person singular and the first and the second persons plural.

The imperative of verbs with the plural ending *-ju* (čitaju) is formed by dropping the final vowel from the third person plural (čitaj) and adding the endings: - (2 sing.), *-mo* (1 plural), *-te* (2 plural) e.g. čitaj, čitaj-mo, čitaj-te.

The verb: *čitati* (to read)

The third person plural: *čitaj-u* (they read)

Singular	Plural
1. _____	1. čitaj-mo (let us read)
2. čitaj (read)	2. čitaj-te (read)
3. _____	3. _____

The imperative of verbs with the plural ending *-u* (idu) or *-e* (vole) is formed by dropping the final vowel from the third person plural (id, vol) and adding the endings *-i* (2 sing.), *-imo* (1 plural), *-ite* (2 plural) e.g. id-i, id-imo, id-ite; vol-i, vol-imo, vol-ite.

The verb: *ići* (to go)

The third person plural: *id-u* (they go)

Singular	Plural
1. _____	1. id-imo (let us go)
2. id-i (go)	2. id-ite (go)
3. _____	3. _____

The imperative of the third persons singular and plural may be expressed by putting the word *neka* (let) in front of the first person singular and plural of the Present tense e.g. *neka* (on, ona, ono) *ide*, *neka* (oni, one, ona) *idu*.

The verb: *ići* (to go)
Third person plural: *id-u* (they go)
Third person singular
of the Present Tense: *ide* (he goes)

Singular	Plural
1. _____	1. <i>id-imo</i> (let us go)
2. <i>id-i</i> (go)	2. <i>id-ite</i> (go)
3. <i>neka</i> (on) <i>ide</i> (let him go)	3. <i>neka</i> (oni) <i>idu</i> (let them go)
3. <i>neka</i> (ona) <i>ide</i> (let her go)	3. <i>neka</i> (one) <i>idu</i> (let them go)
3. <i>neka</i> (ono) <i>ide</i> (let it go)	3. <i>neka</i> (ona) <i>idu</i> (let them go)

174

2. Negative imperative

The negative imperative is formed by putting the word *ne* before the verb e.g.

Singular: 2. *ne idi* (don't go), 3. *neka* (on, ona, ono) *ne ide* (don't let him, her, it go)

Plural: 1. *ne idimo* (don't let us go), 2. *ne idite* (don't go), 3. *neka* (oni, one, ona) *ne idu* (don't let them go)

3. The imperative of *reći* (to say) and *pomoći* (to help)

a) The verb *reći* (to say):

Singular: 2. *reci* (say), 3. *neka on reče* (let him say)

Plural: 1. *recimo* (let us say), 2. *recite* (say), 3. *neka oni reku* (let them say).

b) The verb *pomoći* (to help):

Singular: 2. *pomozi* (help), 3. *neka (on) pomogne* (let him help)

Plural: 1. *pomozimo* (let us help), 2. *pomozite* (help), *neka (oni) pomognu* (let them help).

4. The active past participle of the verb *ići* (to go)

The verb *ići* (to go) has an irregular active past participle:
singular *išao* (m.), *išla* (f.), *išlo* (n.)
plural – *išli* (m.), *išle* (f.), *išla* (n.)

5. Adjectival adverbs

Some adjectives in the neuter singular may be used as adverbs. Such adverbs are compared like adjectives e.g.

<i>toplo</i> (warm)	<i>toplije</i> (warmer)	<i>najtoplije</i> (the warmest)
<i>brzo</i> (fast)	<i>brže</i> (faster)	<i>najbrže</i> (the fastest)
<i>dobro</i> (well)	<i>bolje</i> (better)	<i>najbolje</i> (the best)

6. Prepositions (continued)

Prepositions *od* (from, of, than), *kod* (at), *duž* (along) and *osim* (besides)

175

The prepositions *od*, *kod*, *duž* and *osim* are used with the Genitive.

Od with the Genitive:

Nedaleko od kolodvora je pošta. The post-office is not far from the railway-station.

Djeca vole voćni sok *od* jagoda. Children like strawberry juice.

Dubrovnik je jedan *od* najljepših gradova na svijetu. Dubrovnik is one of the most beautiful towns in the world.

Zagreb je stariji *od* New Yorka. Zagreb is older than New York.

Kod with the Genitive:

A sad smo već *kod* kuće. And now we are at home.

Duž with the Genitive:

Duž obale imamo novu cestu. We have got a new road along the coast.

Osim with the Genitive:

A osim toga u filmu ima mnogo lijepih misli. And besides this there are many good ideas in the film.

Exercises

Translation from Lesson 26:

(I)

1. Gledao je u more.
2. Pogledao je u sobu.
3. Plakala je od nesreće.
4. Zaplakala je od radosti.
5. Ona sve uvijek zaboravlja.
6. Zaboravio ju je poljubiti.
7. Pjevali su cijeli dan.
8. Zapjevali su lijepu pjesmu.

(II)

176

Give the second person singular and the first and the second persons plural of the imperative of the following verbs: poći (to go, to set out), ići (to go), doći (to come), reći (to say), slušati (to listen to), osnovati (to found, to set up), ukinuti (to abolish), imati (to have), prikazivati se (to perform), zvati (to call), čekati (to wait).

28. vježba (Dvadeset osma vježba)

HÔTEL „CRÒATIA“ U CÀVTATU

Àna: *Biti* u Dùbrovniku ljèti znáči *biti* u meðunárodnoj vrèvi túrista. *Biti* u Cávttatu znáči *biti* u lúci míra, u oázi smírenosti, u úvali srèće. Cávttat *je* od Dùbrovnika prèma jugoístoku údaljen áutocestom 17 kilometára.

Stjepan: Nèkoć *je* óvdje *bilo* ìlirsko grècki grád Epidaurus. Kásnije *su* ga záuželi Rímljani.

Àna: Dánas *je* Cávttat líjép túristícki grádić, grádić hotèla i odmáralíšta. Tó *je* grádić súptropske klíme, páłmi, agáva, káktusa, bórova, čempresa, šúma, mírisnog bílja, meditéranskog žbúnja, brnistre i – bugenvílije. Cávttat íma nájljépši hôtél u jùžnoj Hřvatskoj – „Cròatiju“. Sáv *je* u bílju. Ljèpši hôtél? Zacíjèlo ga níjèste vídjeli.

Jane: A káko se zóve óva prèkrasna ljùbičasta bíljka, óvdje, na terási hotèla?

Stjepan: Tó *je* bugenvílija, bíljka penjáčica, podrijetlom iz Amèrike. A óno támo, na óbali, i óno *su* bugenvílije. A sád da vas upòznam s dírektórima hotèla. Óvo *je* gòspar Đuro, a óvo gòspar Míljenko.

Míljenko: *Biti* ćemo vam úvijek na úsluzi. Gòspar Đuro brínut će se za hránu i píće, a já za svè óstalo. A káko se zóveš tí, djevójiće? Pa tí već líjèpo gòvoríš hřvatski.

Jane: Zóvem se Jane. A zášto tí, gòsparu Míljenko, nè dođeš živjeti k náma, u Amèríku?

Míljenko: Záto – jer mi *je* óvdje líjèpo. Záto – jer vòlim kámen, móre i lét gálebova. Záto – jer *sam* óvdje óno što jèsam, jer *sam* óvdje – svój.

Jane: Hm! Táta, a štò to znáči – *biti* svój?

Joseph: Tó ću ti reći u ídućoj vjèžbi.

The forms of the verb *to be* are printed in italics.

177

Words and phrases

dvadeset osma (f.)	- the twenty eighth
Cavtat (m.)	- Cavtat, the name of a town
ljeti	- in summer
značiti (značim)	- to mean
međunarodni, a, o	- international
vreva (f.)	- tumult, crowd, multitude
luka (f.)	- port
mir (m.)	- peace
oaza (f.)	- oasis
smirenost (f.)	- peace
uvala (f.)	- cove, small bay
jugoistok (m.)	- south-east
udaljen, a, o	- far, distant, remote, away, from
autocesta (f.)	- motorway, road, highway
kilometar, kilometra (m.)	- kilometre, kilometer
ilirski, a, o	- Illyrian
grčki, a, o	- Greek, Grecian, Hellenic
Epidaurus (m.)	- Epidaurus, the name of a city
kasnije	- later on, afterwards
zauzeti (zauzmem)	- conquer, capture
Rimljanin (m.)	- a Roman; Rimljani (m. pl.) - the Romans
gradić (m.)	- a small town
odmaralište (m.)	- holiday resort
suptropski, a, o	- subtropical
palma (f.)	- palm tree
agava (f.)	- agave, tropical plant
kaktus (m.)	- cactus
bor (m.)	- pine; pl. of <i>bór</i> is <i>bòrovi</i> ; <i>bòrova</i> is gen. pl. of <i>bór</i>
čempres (m.)	- cypress
šuma (f.)	- forest, wood
mirisan, sna, sno	- aromatic, fragrant, sweet-smelling
bilje (n.)	- (col.) plants, herbs
mediteranski, a, o	- Mediterranean
žbunje (n.)	- (col.) shrubs, bushes
brnista (f.)	- broom
bugenvilija (f.)	- bougainvillea
južni, a, o	- southern
zacijelo	- surely, I daresay, undoubtedly, certainly
ljubičast, a, o	- violet
biljka (f.)	- plant
biljka penjačica (f.)	- creeper, climbing plant, climber

178

podrijetlo (n.)	- origin, stock, extraction
direktor (m.)	- director
gospár, gospára (m.)	- gentleman, gospodin; <i>gospár</i> , a title of courtesy, used in Dubrovnik and its surroundings
bit ćemo vam uvijek na usluzi	- we will always be at your service
brinuti se (brinem se)	- take care of, look after, provide for
hrana (f.)	- food
ostali, a, o	- the rest
za sve ostalo	- for all the rest, for everything else
kamen (m.)	- stone, rock
let (m.)	- flight
galeb (m.); galebovi, galebi (pl.)	- sea-gull
dati (dam)	- to give
ostaviti (ostavim)	- to leave
uzeti (uzmem)	- to take
zadovoljan, ljna, ljno	- satisfied, content, pleased

Conversational expressions

bit ćemo vam uvijek na usluzi	- we will always be at your service
za sve ostalo	- for all the rest, for everything else
pa ti već lijepo govoriš hrvatski	- but you already speak Croatian very well
da vas upoznam sa	- let me introduce you to
kako se zoveš	- what is your name

179

1. Affirmative and negative form of the verb *biti* (to be)

Affirmative form

Long form	Short form	
Singular		Singular
jèsam	sam	I am
jèsi	si	you are
jèst	je	he is
jèst	je	she is
jèst	je	it is
Plural		Plural
jèsmo	smo	we are
jèste	ste	you are
jèsu	su	they are

180

Negative form

Singular		Singular
nìsam	or	nijèsam
nìsi		nijèsi
nije		nije
nije		nije
nije		nije
Plural		Plural
nìsmo		nijèsmo
nìste		nijèste
nìsu		nijèsu

The long or the stressed form of the verb *biti* (to be) is used when it is stressed in the sentence or at the beginning of a sentence, e.g.

Jèsi li zadovoljan. Jèsam. Are you satisfied. Yes, I am.
 Ili jèsmo, ili nismo. Either we are or we are not.

The negative form *nijesam* is used more rarely than the usual form *nisam*. However, it is very much used in Dubrovnik and its surroundings, e.g.

Jèste li danas bìli u Dùbrovniku? Nè, nijèsam.

2. Demonstrative pronouns *ovaj*, *taj* and *onaj*

òvaj,	òva,	òvo-	this,	that
táj,	tá,	tó-	this,	that
ònaj,	òna,	òno-	this,	that

In Croatian the demonstrative pronouns *ovaj*, *taj* and *onaj* express varying degrees of nearness or proximity. *Ovaj* refers to things nearest to the 1st speaker, *taj* nearest to the 2nd speaker, and *onaj* nearest to the 3rd speaker, e.g.

Èvo ti *òva* knjiga (the book is in my hand),
 ú mèni *dáj tú* (the book is in your hand), a
ònu óndje óstavi na míru (the book is far away from both of us).

181

Examples from Lesson 28:

A káko se zòve *òva* prèkrasna ljùbičasta bìljka, óvdje, na terási hótela? *Tó* je bugenvìlija, bìljka penjàčica, podrijetlom iz Amèrike. A *òna* tàmò, na òbalí, i *òno* su bugenvìlije.

Exercises

Translate into Croatian:

- (1)
1. Take this book, this book here, in my hand.
2. Give me that book, that book in your right hand.
3. Give me that book, that book over there.
4. Who is that tall man over there?
5. Whose is this pencil, yours of mine?

The imperatives from Lesson 27:

(I)

pódi, pódimo, pódite; ìdi, ìdimo, ìdite; dódi, dódimó, dóдите; rèci, rècimo, rècite; slúšaj, slúšajmo, slúšajte; ósnuj, ósnujmo, ósnujte; ùkini, ùkinimo, ùkinite; ìmaj, ìmajmo, ìmajte; prikàzuj se, prikàzujmo se, prikàzujte se; zòvi zòvimo zòvite; čekaj, čekajmo, čekajte.

29. vježba (Dvadeset deveta vježba)

ÓJ, BÙDI SVÓJ!

- Jane:** Ó, pa mi ìmamo sòbu s pògledom na móre. Pògled *je* ódista prèkrasan.
- Miljenko:** Èvo, óvdje ìmate rádío. Ùpravo pjèva Krúnoslav Slabínac.
- Rádío:** Stòg *bùdi* tó što *jèsi*
Onàkva kàkvu te znám
Jer čini mi se kào da u *svòjoj* màšti
Baš tàkvu sam te stvòrio sám
Bùdi tó što *jèsi*
Onàkva kàkvu te znám
Jer čini mi se dà sam cijélog *svóg* živòta
Baš tàkvu ženu želio sám
- Jane:** Ópet: *bùdi* óno što *jèsi*!
- John:** Shakespeare u *Hamletu* kaže nešto slično (číta):
 Ali óvo ìznad svèga –
 Sám prèma sèbi *bùdi* ìstinit,
 Jer zàtim slijèdi kào nóc za dánom,
 Da nikom làžan *biti* nè možeš.
- Stjepan:** Ta misao vrlo je stàra. Već je Heràklit rèkao: „*Bùdi* óno što *jèsi*.“ A hrvatski pjèsnik August Šenoa ispjevao je pjèsmu pod náslovom *Bùdi svój*, gdje kaže:
- I *nijèsi*, bràte, živio zalúdu,
 Kad *jèsi svój*.
- Joseph:** Dàkle, što to znàči – *biti svój*? To znàči mnògo stvàri. To znàči – poznàvati sámoga sèbe. To znàči – poznàvati *svòje* podrijetlo. To znàči – poznàvati *svój* màterinski jèzik. To znàči – poznàvati svòju dòmovinu.
- Edward:** Czeslaw Milosz, pòljski nòbelovac kòji živi u Amèrici, lijépo *je* rèkao: „Sàmo *je* jèzik dòmovina.“
- Mary:** Zàto móramo poznàvati hrvatski jèzik, jer ì to znàči: *biti svój*.
- The forms of the verb *biti* and the personal pronoun *svój*, *a*, *e* are printed in italics.

Words and phrases

dvadeset deveta (f.)	- the twenty ninth
odista	- indeed, truly, really, certainly
radio, radija (m.)	- radio, wireless
upravo	- just, directly, exactly, precisely
stoga(a)	- therefore, on that account
onakav, onakva, onakvo	- such a one (man, person), of that kind (sort, nature, quality)
činiti se (činim se)	- seem, appear, look like
čini mi se	- it seems to me, I think
mašta (f.)	- fancy, imagination, fantasy
baš	- just, exactly, quite, precisely
takav, takva, takvo	- such (a), of such kind (sort, manner, shape, size, character)
stvoriti (stvorim)	- create, form, make, mould
život, života (m.)	- life
sličan, slična, slično	- similar, analogous, alike
Shakespeare	- Shakespeare (čitaj: Šekspir)
kazati (kažem)	- say, tell
čitati (čitam)	- to read
iznad	- above; the translation from <i>Hamlet</i> is by the Croatian translator Milan Bogdanović; the original (<i>Hamlet</i> , 1.3.) runs as follows: This above all, to thine own self be true And it must follow as the night the day Thou canst not then be false to any man...
prema	- toward, to, against
istinit, a, o	- true, authentic
slijediti (slijedim)	- to follow, to come after
slijedi kao noć za danom	- it follows as the night the day
nitko, nikoga	- nobody, no one
lažan, žna, o	- false, untrue
već	- already
Heraklit	- Heraclitus, a philosopher who wrote about 500 B.C.
pjesnik (m.)	- poet
ispjevati, (ispjevam)	- to make a poem, to write a poem, to compose a poem
naslov (m.)	- name, title
pod	- under, below, beneath, towards, at
pod naslovom	- under the title
zaludu, uzalud	- in vain, uselessly, of no avail, to no purpose

184

poznavati (poznajem)	- to know, to understand
poznavati (poznajem) sebe, se	- to know one's self
materinski, a, o	- mother, motherly, maternal
materinski jezik	- mother-tongue, native-tongue
poljski, a, o	- Polish
nobelovac (m.)	- a Nobel-prize winner
samo	- only, nothing else, merely, solely, purely
osobno	- personally, in person
glavom	- in person
sam glavom	- in person
netko	- someone
drugi	- other, the other, the others, else, second, another
mjesto	- instead of
osamljen	- alone
jedini, a, o	- an only one, the only

Conversational expressions

budi svoj	- be your own self
soba s pogledom na more	- a room with a view of the sea
što to znači	- what does it mean
ispjevao je pjesmu pod naslovom	- he wrote a poem under the title
to znači mnogo stvari	- this means a lot of things
poznavati samoga sebe	- to know your own self
materinski jezik	- mother-tongue, native tongue

185

Grammatical explanation

1. Four different stems of the verb biti (to be)

The verb *biti* has four different stems: *bi-*, *jes-*, *s-*, and *bud-*.

2. The imperative of biti (to be)

Singular		Singular	
1. _____		1. _____	
2. bûd-i		2. be	
3. _____		3. _____	
Plural		Plural	
1. bûd-imo		1. be	
2. bûd-ite		2. be	
3. _____		3. _____	

3. The possessive pronoun svôj, a, e (one's own)

Svoj is used for all persons instead of *moj* (mine), *tvoj* (thine, yours), *njegov* (his), *njezin* (hers), *naš* (ours), *vaš* (yours), *njihov* (theirs), e.g.

Ja volim <i>svoju</i> majku	I like <i>my</i> mother
Ti voliš <i>svoju</i> majku	You like <i>your</i> mother
On voli <i>svoju</i> majku	He likes <i>his</i> mother
Ona voli <i>svoju</i> majku	She likes <i>her</i> mother
Ono (dijete) voli <i>svoju</i> majku	He, she (the child) likes (his, her) mother
Mi volimo <i>svoju</i> domovinu	We like <i>our</i> country
Vi volite <i>svoju</i> domovinu	You like <i>your</i> country
Oni vole <i>svoju</i> domovinu	They like <i>their</i> country

Svoj shows that something belongs to the subject of the sentence, e.g.

Ja ću ti dati *svoju* lutku, a ti mi daj *svojega* mačka.
I will give you my doll, and you give me your tom-cat.

Note:

Ja volim <i>svoje</i> (not: <i>moje</i>) roditelje.	I like my parents.
Ti voliš <i>svoje</i> (not: <i>tvoje</i>) roditelje.	You like your parents.
On voli <i>svoje</i> (not: <i>njegove</i>) roditelje	He likes his parents.
Ona voli <i>svoje</i> (not: <i>njezine</i>) roditelje.	She likes her parents.

Ono (dijete) voli *svoje* (not: *njegove*) roditelje. He, she (the child) likes his, her parents.

Mi volimo *svoje* (not: *naše*) roditelje. We like our parents.

Vi volite *svoje* (not: *vaše*) roditelje. You like your parents.

Oni vole *svoje* (not: *njihove*) roditelje. They like their parents.

But:

Ti poznaješ *moje* roditelje. You know my parents.

On poznaje *tvoje* roditelje. He knows your parents.

Ja poznajem *njegove* roditelje. I know his parents.

4. The declension of the possessive pronoun svôj, a, e

Singular (jednina)		
Muški rod (masculine)	Ženski rod (feminine)	Srednji rod (neuter)
N. svôj	svôj-a	svôj-e
G. svôj-ega, svôg(a)	svôj-e	svôj-ega, svôg(a)
D. svôj-emu, svôm(u)	svôj-oj	svôj-emu, svôm(u)
A. svôj or svôj-eg(a)	svôj-u	svôj-e
V. svôj	svôj-a	svôj-e
L. svôj-em(u), svôm-u	svôj-oj	svôj-emu, svôm(u)
I. svôj-im	svôj-om	svôj-im
Plural (množina)		
N. svôj-i	svôj-e	svôj-a
G. svôj-ih	svôj-ih	svôj-ih
D. svôj-ima, svôji-m	svôj-ima, svôj-im	svôj-ima, svôj-im
A. svôj-e	svôj-e	svôj-a
V. svôj-i	svôj-e	svôj-a
L. svôj-im(a)	svôj-im(a)	svôj-im(a)
I. svôj-im(a)	svôj-im(a)	svôj-im(a)

5. The word sám

The word *sam* has a double meaning: 1) osobno, glavom, ne drugi mjesto mene (I myself, in person, not through an agent; In Latin: *ipse*), and 2) osamljen, jedini (alone, isolated, lonely; in Latin: *solus*). e.g.

1. Učinio sam to *sam* (I did it myself, I did it single handed), and
2. Bio sam *sám* (I was alone).

In this lesson the word *sam* is used as a pronominal adjective (osobno, glavom), e.g.

Baš takvu sam te stvorio I myself have created you such as
sám you are

Jer čini mi se da sam cijelog svog života
Baš takvu ženu želio *sám*

For it seems to me that throughout my whole life
I myself have desired such a wife

188

Exercises

Translation from Lesson 28:

(I)

1. Uzmí òvu knjìgu, òvu knjìgu óvdje, u mòjoj rúci.
2. Dáj mi tú knjìgu, tú knjìgu u svòjoj dèсноj rúci.
3. Dáj mi ònu knjìgu, ònu knjìgu óndje.
4. Tkò je ònaj visoki ÷òvjek tàmo prijèko?
5. Čija je òva òlovka, tvòja ili mòja?

30. vježba (Trideseta vježba)

DO VIDĚNJA ĪDUĆE GĀDINE

- Stjepan:** Prtljaga je u autobusu. Sve je u redu.
Šofer: Molim putnike da uđu u autobus za Čilipe. Pòlazimo za pet minuta.
Ana: Uskoro lètite u Amèriku!
Mary: Źao mi je što napuštamo òvu ljepòtu: súnce i mòre. Tòliko smo slùšali o stàrom kràju, ali nismo mnogo ò njemu znàli. Htjeli smo da i naša djeca upoznaju zemlju svòjih prèdaka. Źato smo dòšli u Hrvatsku.
Joseph: Sada znàmo da je stàri kràj – Hrvatska – zemlja neòbično lijèpa i pùna prirodniè bogàtstava. Naučili smo i to da je njezina kultúra i tràdicija bogata i stàra, te da ima slàvnu pòvijest. Mislili smo da je to siromašna zemlja, a sad vidimo kàko se òna brzo razvija.
John: Pònosni smo na zemlju naših ròditelja. Našim prijateljima u Amèrci pričat ćemo sve što smo vidjeli. Dòbro ćemo naučiti hrvatski jèzik i pònovno dòći u stàri kràj.
Jane: Pokàzat ćemo im i film!
Stjepan: Već smo na aerodromu. Jòsipe, kùpi slàdoled za tvòje prijatelje i bràću.
Edward: Èno aviòna! Ivane, Àntune – vidite li aviòn? Njime lètimo u Ènglesku, a ònda u Amèriku. Jòsip pùtuje s nama u Amèriku – bit će naš gòst gòdinu dàna.
Mary: Hvala vam na svemu!
Stjepan: Do viđenja iduće gòdine. Srètan pùt u Amèriku!
Svi: Do viđenja!

189

Words and phrases

- | | |
|-------------------------|----------------------------|
| trideseti, a, o | – the thirtieth |
| idući, a, e | – next |
| godina (f.) | – year |
| do viđenja iduće godine | – so long (till) next year |

prtljaga (f.)	- luggage
sve je u redu	- everything is all right
šofer (m.)	- driver
putnik (m.)	- passenger
ući (udem)	- to enter, to get into
Čilipi (pl.)	- Čilipi, a small place near Dubrovnik, to-day an aerodrome
molim putnike da uđu u autobus	- will the passengers please get into the bus
polaziti (polazim)	- to leave, to start, to set off
polazimo za pet minuta	- we are leaving in five minutes
letjeti (letim)	- to fly
uskoro letite u Ameriku	- you are flying for America soon
žao mi je	- I am sorry
napustiti (napuštam)	- to leave
žao mi je što napuštamo ovu ljepotu	- I am sorry that we are leaving this beauty
toliko	- so much
slušati (slušam)	- to listen to
znati (znam)	- to know
nismo mnogo o nje-mu znali	- we did not know much about her
upoznati (upoznam)	- to get to know
svoj, a, e	- his
predak (m.)	- ancestor, progenitor
zato	- therefore
doći (dolazim)	- to come; the active past participle of the verb <i>doći</i> is <i>dôšao, dôšla, dôšlo - dôšli, e, a</i>
Jugoslavija (f.)	- Yugoslavia
zato smo došli u Jugoslaviju	- because of that we came to Yugoslavia
neobičan, neobična, o	- unusual
prirodni, a, o	- natural
bogatstvo (n.)	- riches, wealth, resources
puna prirodnih bogatstava	- full of natural resources
naučiti (naučim)	- to learn
tradicija (f.)	- tradition
te	- and
slavan, a, o	- famous
povijest (f.)	- history
malen, a, o	- small, little

siromašan, a, o	- poor
kako	- how
kako se ona brzo razvija	- how fast it is developing
ponosan, a, o	- proud
ponosni smo	- we are proud
ponovno	- again
film (m.)	- film
pokazati (pokazujem)	- to show
pokazat ćemo im i film	- we will show them the film too
aerodrom (m.)	- aerodrome, air-port
sladoled (m.)	- ice-cream
braća (pl.)	- brothers-
avion (m.)	- aeroplane
njime letimo u Englesku	- we are flying to England in it
Engleska (f.)	- England
godina (f.)	- year
godinu dana	- for a year
hvala vam na svemu	- thank you for everything
sretan, a o	- happy
sretan put	- have a good trip

Conversational expressions

do viđenja iduće godine	- so long (till) next year
sve je u redu	- everything is all right
ponosni smo	- we are proud
godinu dana	- for a year
hvala vam na svemu	- thank you for everything
sretan put	- have a good trip

DICTIONARY

RJEČNIK

1. GREETINGS – EVERYDAY EXPRESSIONS –
– SHOPPING

POZDRAVI – SVAKIDAŠNJI IZRIČAJI –
– KUPOVANJE

Greetings (Pozdravi)*

good morning	dobro jutro
good day (greeting from late morning to late evening)	dobar dan
good evening	dobar večer
good night	laku noć
so long	do viđenja
good-bye	zbogom
cheerio, hi, hello	zdravo (used when greeting or leaving a person, like Italian <i>ciao</i>)
my name is	zovem se
sir (in address); mister	gospodin
madam (in address); lady	gospođa
comrade (to a man)	drug
comrade (to a woman)	drugarica
this is Mr. Tomičić	ovo je gospodin Tomičić
this is Mrs. Tomičić	ovo je gospođa Tomičić
this is comrade Tomičić	ovo je drug Tomičić
this is comrade Tomičić	ovo je drugarica Tomičić
pleased to meet you	drago mi je što sam vas sreo
how are you?	kako ste?
very well, thank you	hvala, vrlo dobro
and you?	a vi?
extremely well, excellent	izvrsno
come in	udite
where do you come from?	odakle ste?
where have you been?	gdje ste bili?
where are you going?	kamo idete?
do you speak Croatian?	govorite li hrvatski?, da li govorite hrvatski?

* For the pronunciation rules see pp. 16-48 of this book.

yes, a little
I understand
I do not understand

da, malo
razumijem
ne razumijem

Everyday expressions (Svakidašnji izričaji)

yes
no
perhaps
I know
I do not know
excuse me, please
thank you; thanks
thank you very much
with pleasure
please
you are very kind
I am very grateful to you
I am sorry
don't worry
come here
what is the matter?
wait a moment
everything is all right

da
ne
možda
znam
ne znam
oprostite, molim
hvala vam; hvala
hvala lijepa
rado, sa zadovoljstvom
izvolite
vrlo ste ljubazni
vrlo sam vam zahvalan
žao mi je
ne brinite
dodite ovamo
što je?
pričekajte malo
sve je u redu

Shopping (Kupovanje)

what is this?
what is that called?
how much is it?
what is the price of that?
here is
here are
to pay
I would like to pay, please
paying-desk, cash-desk
at the paying desk
please pay at the paying
desk
the bill, please
take the bill, please

što je to?
kako se to zove?
koliko to košta (stoji)?
kolika je tome cijena?
ovdje je
ovdje su
platiti
platiti, molim
blagajna
na blagajni
izvolite platiti na blagajni

molim račun
izvolite račun

2. FOOD AND DRINK HRANA I PIĆE

In the Restaurant: Breakfast, Lunch and Dinner
U restoranu: Doručak, objed i večera

Breakfast (Doručak, zajutrak)

good morning
what have we got for break-
fast, please
coffee
coffee with milk
black coffee
butter
jam
bread
rolls
milk
tea
tea, please
tea with milk, please
tea with lemon, please
tea with rum, please
give me white coffee,
please
give me black coffee,
please

dobro jutro
molim vas, što imamo za do-
doručak
kava
bijela kava
crna kava
maslac
džem
kruh
pecivo
mlijeko
čaj
molim čaj
molim čaj s mlijekom
molim čaj s limunom
molim čaj s rumom
molim, dajte mi bijelu kavu

molim, dajte mi crnu kavu

Objed (Lunch)

good day
take a seat, please; please
(do) sit down
I am hungry (m.)
I am hungry (f.)
I am thirsty (m.)
I am thirsty (f.)

dobar dan
izvolite sjesti

gladan sam
gladna sam
žedan sam
žedna sam

let's have something to
drink
waiter, please
what do you drink?
I should like an aperitif
would you like a liqueur, a
vermouth, a brandy?
brandy
plum brandy (speciality of
the country)
cognac
your health
cheers

what have you got for
lunch?
here is the menu, please
can you recommend a lo-
cal dish
cold cuts; slices of various
sorts of sausages, salamis,
ham or cheese eaten as the
first course of the meal
(hors d'oeuvre)

smoked ham (speciality of
the country)
good appetite

soup
chicken soup
vegetable soup
beef soup
tomato soup
beer
mineral water
lemonade
lemonade with ice
soda-water
fruit juice
wine
white wine
red wine
dry wine
sweet wine
give me a bottle of wine
(mineral water), please

idemo nešto popiti
konobar, molim vas
što pijete?
želim aperitiv
želite li likera, vermuta, raki-
je?
rakija
šljivovica
konjak
na zdravlje
živjeli

što imate za objed?
izvolite jelovnik
možete li preporučiti neko do-
maće jelo?
hladni naresci

pršut
dobar tek, u slast

juha
pileća juha
juha od povrća
goveđa juha
juha od rajčica
pivo
mineralna voda
limunada
limunada s ledom
soda
voćni sok
vino
bijelo vino
crveno vino
trpko vino
slatko vino
molim, dajte mi bocu vina
(mineralne vode)

a glass of beer, please
a pint of beer, please
please have some wine
do you have a good local
wine?
kutjevački burgundac, the
name of a red or white wine
dingač, the name of a very
rich wine from Dalmatia
prošek, very rich sweet des-
sert wine
bakarska vodica, fruity and
sparkling wine

chicken
deep-fried spring-chicken
(speciality of the country)
duck
turkey
purica s mlincima, young
turkey with special pastry
called »mlincica« (pastry is
rolled out and then baked
or roasted)

veal
roast veal
veal chop
pork
roast pork

pork chop
beef
fillet of beef
beefsteak
EGG
scrambled-eggs
nadjevena paprika (stuffed
peppers); green peppers
stuffed with minced meat
and rice
sarma; pickled cabbage
leaves rolled and filled
with minced meat
duveč, stew made of rice,
tomatoes, green peppers,
carrots and French beans

čašu piva, molim
kriglu piva, molim
izvolite vina
imate li dobro domaće vino?

kutjevački burgundac

dingač

prošek

bakarska vodica

pilići
pohani pilići

patka
puran
purica s mlincima

teletina
pečena teletina, teleće pečenje
teleći odrezak
svinjetina
pečena svinjetina, svinjeće pe-
čenje
svinjeći odrezak
govedina
goveđi odrezak
biftek
jaje
kajgana
nadjevena paprika

sarma

duveč

rissoto
this is our national dish

fish
trout
pike
crayfish
sheathfish
carp
sturgeon
perch
bream
herring
oyster
John Dory
bass
mullet
dental
plaice
sole
gilt-head
mussel
ink fish, squids, calamary
lobster
cuttle-fish
eel
tunny, tuna
ray
sardine, anchovy
prawns or shrimps or scampi
mackerel
cod
sprat
scallop-shell

vegetables
potatoes
rice
carrots
cabbage
peas
French beans
beans
salad
lettuce
cucumbers

rižoto
to je naše narodno jelo

riba
pastrva
štuka
riječni (slatkovodni) rak
som
šaran
jesetra
grgeč
deverika
sled, haringa
oštriga
kovač
luben (brancin)
cipalj
zubatac
list, iverak, švoja
list
orada
školjka, mušula
lignja, lignje
jastog
sipa
ugor, jegulja
tuna
raža
srdjela, sardina
skampi
skuša, lokarda
bakalar
sledica
jakovska kapica (školjka)

povrće
krumpir
riža
mrkva
zelje, kupus
grašak
mahune
grah
salata
zelena salata
krastavci

beetroot
tomatoes
capsicum, green peppers, red
peppers
onions
beans
cabbage
sour cabbage
mixed salad
oil
vinegar

cake
studel; kind of pastry
made of rolled out paste
filled with fruit
apple strudel
cheese strudel
cherry strudel

fruit
fruit-salad
apple
pear
plum
grapes
apricot
peach

cheese
tea
coffee
turkish coffee
white coffee

how much is the lunch?

cikla
rajčica, paradajz
paprika

luk
grah
zelje
kiselo zelje
miješana salata
ulje
ocet

kolač
savijača

savijača od jabuka
savijača od sira
savijača od trešanja

voće
voćna salata
jabuka
kruška
šljiva
grožđe
kajsija
breskva

sir
čaj
kava
turska kava
bijela kava

koliko stoji (košta) objed?

Dinner (Večera)

good evening

waitress

dobar večer, dobra večer, dobro večer
konobarica

would you like to have dinner?; do you want to have dinner?

would you like something to eat?; do you want something to eat

is that table free?

what have you got for dinner?

what would you like to eat?

we can order ćevapčići and ražnjići

a portion of ćevapčići, please

a portion of ražnjići, please
ćevapčići (pl.); tiny rolls of ground meat grilled and served with chopped raw onions

ražnjići (pl.); bits of pork grilled on a skewer and served with chopped raw onions

mutton, lamb

lamb roasted on a spit

suckling pig

suckling pig roasted on a spit

duck

duck roasted on a spit

snipe

what would you like to drink?

will you please bring

a bottle of beer, please

a bottle of wine, please

a litre (liter) of wine, please

a glass of wine, please

immediately, at once

thank you for the dinner
it was excellent
good-night

hoćete li večerati?

hoćete li nešto pojesti?

je li onaj stol slobodan?

što imate za večeru?

što želite jesti?

možemo naručiti ćevapčiče i ražnjiće

molim porciju ćevapčića

molim porciju ražnjića

ćevapčići

ražnjići

janjetina

janjetina na ražnju

odojak

odojak na ražnju

patka

patka na ražnju

šljuka

kakvo piće želite?

molim (vas), donesite

molim bocu piva

molim bocu vina

molim litru vina

molim čašu vina

odmah

hvala na večeri

bila je izvrsna

laku noć

3. IN THE HOTEL (U HOTELU)

welcome

welcome to Zagreb

I want a single room

I want a double room

I want a room with two beds, with a double bed

I want a room for one night

I want a room with a balcony

I want a room with a view of the sea

I want a room with a bathroom

I want a room on the first floor

can I see the room?

how much do you charge per day?

this is a beautiful room

I will take this room

can I have this room for the night

can I have breakfast in my room?

can we have an English breakfast?

when does the hotel close?

is it open the whole night?

please post this letter

please put the stamps on

please put it on my bill

have my bill made out, please

how much is my bill?

tip

dobro došli

dobro došli u Zagreb

želim jednokrevetnu sobu

želim dvokrevetnu sobu

želim sobu s dva kreveta, s dvostrukim krevetom

želim sobu za jednu noć

želim sobu s balkonom

želim sobu s pogledom na more

želim sobu s kupaonicom

želim sobu na prvom katu

mogu li vidjeti sobu?

koliko računate na dan?

to je divna soba

uzet ću ovu sobu

mogu li ovu sobu dobiti za noć?

mogu li doručkovati u svojoj sobi?

možemo li dobiti engleski doručak?

kada se hotel zatvara?

je li otvoren cijelu noć?

molim, otpremite ovo pismo; molim predajte ovo pismo na poštu

molim, priljepite marke

molim vas, stavite to na moj račun

molim vas, sastavite moj račun

koliko iznosi moj račun?

napojnica

here is a tip for the chamber-
maid
we have enjoyed our stay
so long till next year
thank you and good-bye
have a good trip

ovo je napojnica za sobaricu
imali smo ugodan boravak
do viđenja iduće godine
hvala i zbogom
sretan put

4. IN THE BANK (U BANCI)

where can I change my
money?
where is there a bank?
where is there an exchange
office?
is there a bank near here?
is there an exchange office
near here?
can I change a hundred
dollars?
what is the rate of exchange?
please give me large bank-
notes
I should like small change,
please
I have traveller's cheques
can you cash this cheque
for me?
I have a letter of credit on
your bank
I want to draw ten pounds
on this letter of credit
how does the dinar compare
with the dollar?
how does the dinar compare
with the lira?

gdje mogu promijeniti novac?
gdje je banka?
gdje je mjenjačnica?
da li se u blizini nalazi banka?
da li se u blizini nalazi mje-
njačnica?
mogu li promijeniti sto dola-
ra
koji je tečaj mijenjanja novca?
molim, dajte mi velike bank-
note
molim, dajte mi sitan novac
imam putničke čekove
možete li mi promijeniti ovaj
ček?
imam kreditno pismo za vašu
banku
želim podići deset funti s o-
vog kreditnog pisma
kakav je odnos dinara i dola-
ra?
kakav je odnos dinara i lire?

5. TIME – THE DAYS OF THE WEEK – THE NAMES OF THE MONTHS – SEASONS AND POINTS OF THE COMPASS – THE WEATHER

VRIJEME – DANI U TJEDNU – IMENA MJESECI – GODIŠNJA DOBA I STRANE SVIJETA – VRIJEME

Time (Vrijeme)

what is the time?	koliko je sati?
it is noon	podne je
it is midnight	ponoć je
it is one o'clock	jedan sat
it is two o'clock	dva sata
it is five o'clock	pet sati
it is half past one	pola dva, jedan i po
it is a quarter past two	dva i četvrt
it is a quarter to three	četvrt do tri
it is five past three	tri (sata) i pet (minuta)
it is twenty to four	dvadeset (minuta) do četiri
morning	jutro
day	dan
midday	podne
afternoon	poslije podne
evening	večer
night	noć

The Days of the Week (Dani u tjednu, sedmici)

Sunday	nedjelja
Monday	ponedjeljak
Thursday	utorak
Wednesday	srijeda
Thursday	četvrtak
Friday	petak
Saturday	subota

today	danas
tomorrow	sutra
the day after tomorrow	prekosutra
yesterday	jučer
the day before yesterday	prekjučer

The Names of the Months (Imena mjeseci)

January	siječanj (januar)
February	veljača (februar)
March	ožujak (mart)
April	travanj (april)
May	svibanj (maj)
June	lipanj (juni)
July	srpanj (juli)
August	kolovoz (august)
September	rujan (septembar)
October	listopad (oktobar)
November	studeni (novembar)
December	prosinac (decembar)

what is the date today?
today is 1st August 1969

koji je danas datum?
danas je prvi kolovoza 1969.
(1.8.1969. or 1. VIII 1969.)
danas je peti srpnja

today is the fifth of July

Seasons and Cardinal Points (Godišnja doba i strane svijeta)

spring	proljeće
summer	ljet
autumn	jesen
winter	zima
east	istok
west	zapad
north	sjever
south	jug

north-east	sjeveroistok
north-west	sjeverozapad
south-east	jugoistok
south-west	jugozapad
east	istočno (adjective)
west	zapadno
north	sjeverno
south	južno
north-east	sjeveroistočno (adjective)
north-west	sjeverozapadno
south-east	jugoistočno
south-west	jugozapadno

The Weather (Vrijeme)

208

what is the weather like today?
 the weather is fine
 the weather is beautiful
 it is a lovely day today
 it is sunny
 the sun is shining
 it is warm
 it is hot
 it is very windy
 it is cold
 the weather is uncertain
 I think it is going to rain
 it is raining
 I think we shall have a
 thunderstorm
 but it's going to be nice
 tomorrow

kakvo je danas vrijeme?

 vrijeme je lijepo
 vrijeme je krasno
 danas je krasan dan
 sunčano je
 sunce sija
 toplo je
 vruće je
 vrlo je vjetrovito
 hladno je
 vrijeme je nestalno
 mislim da će padati kiša
 kiša pada
 mislim da će biti oluje

 ali će sutra biti lijepo vrijeme

6. NUMERALS (BROJEVI)

a) Cardinal Numerals (Glavni brojevi)

one	jedan (m.) čovjek jedna (f.) žena jedno (n.) dijete
two	dva (m.) čovjeka dvije (f.) žene dva (n.) djeteta
three	tri (m.) čovjeka tri (f.) žene tri (n.) djeteta
four	četiri
five	pet
six	šest
seven	sedam
eight	osam
nine	devet
ten	deset
eleven	jedanaest
twelve	dvanaest
thirteen	trinaest
fourteen	četnaest
fifteen	petnaest
sixteen	šesnaest
seventeen	sedamnaest
eighteen	osamnaest
nineteen	devetnaest
twenty	dvadeset
twenty-one	dvadeset i jedan (or dvadeset jedan)
twenty-nine	dvadeset i devet (or dvadeset devet)
thirty	trideset
forty	četrdeset

209

fifty	pedeset
sixty	šezdeset
seventy	sedamdeset
eighty	osamdeset
ninety	devedeset
a hundred	stotina (<i>or</i> sto)
a hundred and thirteen	sto i trinaest (<i>or</i> sto trinaest)
two hundred	dvije stotine (<i>or</i> dvjesta)
two hundred and fifty three	dvije stotine i pedeset tri (<i>or</i> dvije stotine pedeset tri <i>or</i> dvjesta pedeset tri)
three hundred	tri stotine (<i>or</i> trista)
four hundred	četiri stotine (<i>or</i> četiristo)
five hundred	pet stotina (<i>or</i> petsto)
six hundred	šest stotina (<i>or</i> šesto)
seven hundred	sedam stotina (<i>or</i> sedamsto)
eight hundred	osam stotina (<i>or</i> osamsto)
nine hundred	devet stotina (<i>or</i> devetsto)
a thousand	tisuća (hiljada)
a thousand and one	tisuću i jedan (<i>or</i> tisuću jedan)
a thousand and three	tisuću i tri (<i>or</i> tisuću tri)
two thousand	dvije tisuće
three thousand	tri tisuće
four thousand	četiri tisuće
nine thousand	devet tisuća
a million	milijun
two million	dva milijuna
three million	tri milijuna
nine million	devet milijuna
a billion	milijarda
two billion	dvije milijarde
five billion	pet milijardi

a half	polovina
a quarter	četvrtina
three quarters	tri četvrtine
one-third	trećina
two-thirds	dvije trećine
one-fifth	petina
one-sixth	šestina
one-seventh	sedmina
a dozen	tucet
half a dozen	polu tuceta

b) Ordinal numerals (Redni brojevi)

1st	prvi, a, o*
2nd	drugi, a, o
3rd	treći, a, e
4th	četvrti, a, o
5th	peti, a, o
6th	šesti, a, o
7th	sedmi, a, o
8th	osmi, a, o
9th	deveti, a, o
10th	deseti, a, o
11th	jedanaesti, a, o
12th	dvanaesti, a, o
13th	trinaesti, a, o
14th	četрнаesti, a, o
15th	petnaesti, a, o
16th	šesnaesti, a, o
17th	sedamnaesti, a, o
18th	osamnaesti, a, o
19th	devetnaesti, a, o
20th	dvadesetj, a, o
21st	dvadeset i prvi (<i>or</i> dvadeset prvi)
29th	dvadeset i deveti (<i>or</i> dvadeset deveti)
30th	trideseti

* Ordinal numerals are definite adjectives.

40th	četrdeseti
50th	pedeseti
60th	šezdeseti
70th	sedamdeseti
80th	osamdeseti
90th	devedeseti
100th	stoti
113th	sto trinaesti
200th	dvjestoti
250th	dvjesta pedeseti
253rd	dvjesta pedeset treći
300th	tristoti
400th	četiristoti
500th	petstoti
600th	šestoti
700th	sedamstoti
800th	osamstoti
900th	devetstoti
1000th	tisućiti, hiljaditi
1001st	tisuću prvi
1003rd	tisuću treći
2000th	dvije tisućiti (<i>or</i> dvije hiljaditi)
3000th	tri tisućiti (<i>or</i> tri hiljaditi)
4000th	četiri tisućiti (<i>or</i> četiri hiljaditi)
9000th	devet tisućiti (<i>or</i> devet hiljaditi)
1 000 000th	milioni (<i>or</i> milijunti)
2 000 000th	dva milioni (<i>or</i> dva milijunti)
3 000 000th	tri milioni (<i>or</i> tri milijunti)
9 000 000th	devet milioni (<i>or</i> devet milijunti)
1 000 000 000th	milijarditi
2 000 000 000th	dvije milijarditi
5 000 000 000th	pet milijarditi

PHRASE BOOK FOR TOURISTS

RJEČNIK FRAZA ZA TURISTE

<p>a aerodrom (m.) agáva (f.) ako ali amèrički, a, o Amèrika (f.) Amerikánac (m.) Anindol (m.)</p> <p>ansàmbi (m.) atèlje (m.) Aténa (f.) hìrvatska Aténa atmosféra (f.) atràkcija (f.) auto (m.)</p> <p>autocesta (f.) autobus (m.) autobusom automòbil (m.) u automòbilu automòbilom avion (m.)</p>	<p>and aerodrome, air-port agave, tropical plant if but American America an American Anindol, the name of a park in Samobor ensemble sculptor's studio Athens the Croatian Athens atmosphere attraction car, automobile; <i>auto</i> is the shortened form of <i>automo-</i> <i>bile</i> motorway, road, highway bus by bus car, automobile in the car by car aeroplane</p>
---	--

<p>bàka (f.) balkon (m.) na balkónu bàkine kùće</p> <p>bán (m.)</p> <p>bánka (f.) u báci</p>	<p>grandmother balcony on the balcony of Grand- mother's house viceroy, governor, ban; ban – title of the governor of Croatia in Austrian times bank in the bank</p>
---	--

bánski, a, o
 bàrokni, a, o
 bàrokna zgrada

báš
 bàzen (m.)
 bìftek (m.)
 bijél, bijéla, bijélo (definite
 adjective)
 bijéli, bijéla, bijélo (indefinite
 adjective)
 bìlje (n.)
 bìljka (f.)
 bìljka penjáčica (f.)

bìstar, bìstra, o
 blàgajna (f.)

na blàgajni

izvòlite plátiti na blàgajni
 blàgajnica (f.)
 blagovaònica (f.)
 blijéd, a, o
 bòca (f.)
 mòlim vas bòcu piva
 bògat, a, o
 bogàtstvo (n.)
 bòja (f.)
 u kòjoj bòji?
 bòlestan, bòlesna, o
 bór (m.)
 bòrba (f.)
 bòriti se (bònim se)
 bràca (pl)
 bràt (m.)
 bràtski, a, o
 brijég (m.)
 na vrhu brijéga
 brìnuti se (brìnem se)

bìnistra (f.)
 bród (m.)
 brój (m.)
 brízo
 bugenvilija (f.)

governor's, ban's
 baroque
 baroque building; a building
 built in baroque style
 just, exactly, quite, precisely
 swimming-pool
 beefsteak
 white
 white
 white
 plants, herbs
 plant
 creeper, climbing plant, climber

transparent
 paying-desk, cash-desk, box-
 -office
 at the paying desk, at the box
 -office
 please pay at the paying-desk
 woman-cashier
 dining-room
 pale
 bottle
 a bottle of beer, please
 rich
 riches, wealth, resources
 colour
 what colour?
 sick, ill
 pine
 fight
 to fight
 brothers
 brother
 fraternal
 hill
 on the top of a hill
 take care of, look after,
 provide for
 broom
 boat, ship
 number
 quickly
 bougenvillea

cèntar (m.)
 cèsta (f.)
 cigarèta (f.)
 žèlite li cigarètu?
 cijél, a, o
 po cijéloj zèmlji
 crkva (f.)
 crn, crna, crno
 crni, a, o
 crven, crvena, o
 crveni, a, o
 cvijéce (pl.)

centre
 motorway, road, highway
 cigarette
 do you want a cigarette?
 whole
 through the whole country
 church
 black
 black
 red
 red
 flowers

čaj (m.)
 čak
 čekati (čekam)

čempres (m.)
 često
 četiri
 četiristo or četiri stòtine
 četrnaesta (f.)
 četvrta (f.)
 činiti se (činim se); čini mi
 se
 činovník (m.)

čit, a, o
 čitati (čitam)
 čitav, a, o

tea
 even
 to wait; to queue, to stand in
 a line; mi te óvdje čekamo
 - we will wait for you
 here, ròditelji nas čekaju -
 our parents are waiting for
 us; čekati u rédu - to wait
 in a queue, to stand in a
 line
 cypress
 often
 four
 four hundred
 fourteenth
 fourth
 seem, appear, look like; it
 seems to me, I think
 official, clerk, government
 official, public servant
 clean
 to read
 whole, entire, complete

člán (m.) čovjek (m.) čūven, čūvena, čūveno čūvena po	member man famous famous for
--	---------------------------------------

Č Č

čevapčići (pl.)	čevapčići; tiny rolls of ground meat broiled and served with chopped raw onions
-----------------	---

D D

dà da imamo vremena dàkle Dalmacija (f.) dalmàtinski, a, o dalmàtinski dingač (m.) dàlje màlo dàlje daljina (f.) u daljini dán (m.) dòbar dán dànas dár (m.) dàti (dám) dèset dèseta (f.) dèsni, a, o devedèset dèvet dèveta (f.) devètnaesta (f.) dijéte (n.)	if, that, yes if we had time then, hence, therefore Dalmatia, the southern part of Croatia Dalmatian, from Dalmatia the name of a red wine from Dalmatia further, further on a little further on distance in the distance day good day (literal translation); svàki dán – every day today present, gift to give ten tenth right-hand ninety nine ninth nineteenth child
--	--

218

dīnar (m.) dio (m.) direktor (m.) dīvan, dīvana, o

dívno to je dívno djéca (pl.) djéca – children: <i>djéca</i> is the vocative plural of the word <i>dijéte</i> (n.) djéčak (m.) háj, djéčače djéd (m.) djélo (n.)

djevojčica (f.)

djevojka (f.) do dòbar, dòbra, o dòbiti (dòbijem) dòbro vřilo dòbro
--

dòci (dòdem) dòbro dòšli dòlar (m.) dòlajak (m.) dòlaziti (dòlazim) dòlje dòm (m.) dòmaći, a, e dòmàćin (m.) dòmovina (f.)

dònèsti (donèsem) mòlim vas, donèsite donijeti (donèsem) dòručak (m.) dòručak je gòtov
--

dinar part director marvellous, wonderful, gorgeous, splendid, beautiful wonderfully, marvellously that is marvellous children boy hello, boy; listen, boy grandfather work, product, creation, work of art a little girl; <i>djevojčica</i> is a diminutive of the word <i>djevojka</i> (girl)
--

girl till, to good to get, to obtain well, good, fine very well, just fine; hvála, dòbro – thank you, very well; thanks, fine to come welcome dollar arrival to come, to arrive down, below home domestic, home-made host homeland, native country, mother country, fatherland to bring will you please bring to bring breakfast breakfast is ready; štò imamo za dòručak? – what have we got for breakfast?; za dòručak ima – breakfast consists of

219

dòsad	up to now, so far
dòsta	fairly, rather
dòsta dòbro	fairly well
do vidénja	so long
do vidénja sùtra	so long (till) tomorrow
drág, a, o	dear, favourite, glad
drágo mi je	I am glad; i nàma je drágo – we are glad too
drúg (m.)	friend, colleague
drúgi, a, o	the second; the other, the others, else, another
dìvo (n.)	tree
dùbrovački, a, o	from Dubrovnik
Dùbrovnik (m.)	Dubrovnik, a town in Croatia in the southern Adriatic
dúž	along
dvá	two
dvádeseta (f.)	twentieth
dvádeset četvrta (f.)	the twenty fourth
dvádeset drúga (f.)	the twenty second
dvádeset dèveta	the twenty ninth
dvádeset òsma (f.)	the twenty eighth
dvádeset pèt	twenty five
dvádeset péta (f.)	the twenty fifth
dvádeset píva (f.)	the twenty first
dvádeset sédma (f.)	the twentieth seventh
dvádeset šèsta (f.)	the twenty sixth
dvádeset trèca (f.)	the twenty third
dvánaesta (f.)	twelfth
dvór (m.)	court, castle
Bánski dvóri	the Governor's Palace
dvórac (m.)	castle
dvoràna (f.)	hall
dvòrište (n.)	yard

Dž **Dž**

džèm (m.) jam

D **D**

dák (m.) pupil

E **E**

elegàntan, elegàntna, o	elegant
Èngleska (f.)	England
èngleski, a, o	English
na èngleskom	in English
Èngleskinja (f.)	Englishwoman, English lady
Ènglez (m.)	an Englishman
èno	look, there, see, see there
èno je tàmò	look, there she is
èvo	look, there, look there, see, see there
èvo, izvòlite	here you are
Evrópa (f.)	Europe

F **F**

festíval (m.)	festival
Dùbrovački festíval (m.)	the Dubrovnik festival
filu (m.)	film
o filmu	about the film; što misliš o fil- mu? – what do you (s.) think about the film?
totografski apàrat (m.)	camera

G **G**

gajiti (gájim)	to foster, to nourish
galeb (m.), gálebovi or gálebi (pl.)	sea-gull

galèrija (f.)
gdjè
gdjè je?

gládan, gládna, o
jèste li gládni?

glàsilo (n.)
glasòvit, a, o
glávni, a, o
glávom
sám glávom

glè
glúmac (m.)
glùmica (f.)
glúmiti (glúmim)
gòdina (f.)
gòdiru dána
gòra (f.)
gòrnji, a, e
gòspar, gòspára (m.)
gòspòdski, a, o
gòspòdar (m.)
gòspòdin (m.)

gòspòda (f.)
gòst (m.)
gòtov, a, o
ja sam već gòtova (f.)
gòtovo
gòvòriti (gòvorim)
gòvòriti o

gòvedí, a, e
gòveda júha
grád (m.)
gràdić (m.)
gràdišćanski, a, o

gràdišćanski Hrváti

gramòfonski, a, o

gallery
where
where is?; gdjè su? – where
are?

hungry
are you hungry?

organ, party paper
famous
main
in person
in person, personally

look
actor
actress
to act
year
for a year
mountain
upper
gentleman
noble, high, aristocratic
master
mister, sir (in address); gen-
tleman
lady; madam (in address)
guest
ready
I am already ready
almost
to speak
to speak about; gòvorim mà-
lo hrvatski – I speak a lit-
tle Croatian; pa ví već gò-
vorite hrvatski – but you
already speak Croatian: gò-
vorite li hrvatski? – do you
speak Croatian?

beef
beef soup
town, castle, fortress
a small town
from Gradišće (Burgenland in
Austria)
Croats from Gradišće; Croats
living in Gradišće are cal-
led »gràdišćanski Hrváti«

gramophone

hej, djèčače
Heràklit
hìмна (f.)
hládan, hládna, o
hòbi (m.)
hòtel (m.)
u hòtèlu
hrána (f.)
Hrvat (m.)
Hrvatska (f.)
hrvatski, a, o
Hrvatsko národno kazalište

htjèti (hòću)
htjèli bismo
hvála
hvála vam

listen, boy; hello, boy
Heraclitus, a philosopher
anthem, hymn
cold
hobby
hotel
in the hotel
food, nutriment
a Croat
Croatia
Croatian
Croatian National Theatre;
Hrvatsko primorje (n.) –
Croatian Littoral; Hrvatsko
zàgorje – Croatian Zagorje,
part of northern Croatia

to want, to wish
we would like
thank you
thank you

idi (idem)
idi po Edwarda

idèja (f.)
to je zàišta dòbra idèja

iduci, a, e
igrati se (igram se)
ili
Ilica (f.)

ilirski, a, o
imati (imam)
ime (n.)

also, too, and
to go
go and fetch Edward; (mi)
idemo – we are going
idea
that is really a good idea
next
to play
or
Ilica, name of a street in Za-
greb
Illyrian
to have
name

Indijánac (m.)
 indústrija (f.)
 institúcija (f.)
 iseljènički, a, o
 iseljènički piknik
 iseljènik (m.)
 ispjevati (ispjevam)
 ispod
 ispòd nas
 istinit, a, o
 Ístra (f.)
 ìz
 iz Njèmačke
 ìza
 iza sèla
 izgledati (izgledam)
 izlet (m.)
 izlet u Hrvatsko zàgorje
 224 ìzletište (n.)
 ìzletnik (m.)
 između
 iznad
 iznutra, iznútra
 izrezan, a, o
 izvòljeti (izvolim)
 izvrsan, izvrsna, o

Red Indian
 industry
 institution
 emigrant
 emigrant's picnic
 emigrant
 to write a poem, to compose
 a poem, to make a poem
 under
 under us
 true, authentic
 Istra, a peninsula in the north
 of Croatia
 from
 from Germany
 behind, at the back
 behind the village, at the back
 of the village
 to look, to look like
 excursion, trip, outing
 an excursion to Croatian Za-
 gorye
 a place where one goes for
 excursions and trips
 excursionist, tripper, tourist
 between
 above
 inside
 chopped, cut
 please, here you are; please,
 here it is
 excellent, extraordinary, good,
 delicious

J

J

já
 já sam
 Jádran (m.)
 jádranski, a, o
 Jádranska magistrála (f.)

I
 I am; sa mnóm – with me
 the Adriatic
 Adriatic
 main Adriatic road, Adriatic
 motor-way, Adriatic high-
 -way

jáгода (f.)
 vòčni sók od jágoda
 jáko
 jáo
 jèdan
 jedànaesta (f.)
 jèdini, a, o
 jèdna od
 jèftin, a, o
 jèlen (m.)
 jè li to?
 jèlo (n.)
 jèlovnik (m.)
 izvòlite jèlovnik
 jer
 jèsti (jèdem)
 hòćeš li nešto jèsti?

jèzični, a, o
 jèzik (m.)
 još
 još jèdnóm
 jugòistok (m.)
 júha (f.)
 junak (m.)
 jutro (n.)
 dòbro jutro
 južni, a, o

strawberry
 strawberry juice
 very, considerably, hard
 alas, woe
 one
 eleventh
 the only one, the only
 one of
 cheap
 deer, stag
 is this?
 food, meal, dish
 menu
 here is the menu
 because
 to eat
 would you (thou) like some-
 thing to eat? do you want
 something to eat?; štò žèliš
 jèsti? – what would you (s.)
 like to eat, what do you
 want to eat?
 language
 language
 still, yet
 once more
 south-east
 soup
 hero
 morning
 good morning
 southern

K

K

kád
 kákav, kákva, o
 kákav je ovo spòmenik?
 káko

when
 what kind (sort) of
 what sort of a monument is
 this?
 how

kàko ste?
 kàktus (m.)
 kàmen (m.)
 kàmo
 kàmo vòdi òva cèsta?
 kào
 kào i
 karànfil (m.)
 kárta (f.)
 kàsnije
 kàsno
 kàsno je
 kàtkada
 kàva (f.)
 kàzalište (n.)
 kàzati (kàžem)
 kćeri (pl.)
 kćí (f.)
 kìlomētar (m.)
 kìno (n.)
 iz kína
 kíp (m.)
 kìpar (m.)
 kišòvito
 klíma (f.)
 knjìževnost (f.)
 kòji, a, e
 kòlač (m.)
 kòliko, kòliko
 kòlodvor (m.)
 komàdić (m.)
 komponírati (kompòniram)
 kompòzitor (m.)
 kòncertni, a, o
 kòncertna dvòrana
 kònobar (m.)
 kònobarica (f.)
 kòntinentalan, kòntinentalna, o
 konvèncija (f.)

how are you (pl.)?; kàko si
 (ti)? – how are you (s.)?
 cactus
 stone
 where, in which direction
 where does this road lead?
 like, as
 as, like, and
 carnation
 ticket
 later on, afterwards
 late
 it is late; dòsta je kàsno – it
 is rather late
 sometimes
 coffee
 theatre
 to say, to tell
 daughters; *kćeri* is the plural
 of the noun *kći* (daughter)
 daughter; *kćer* is the Accus-
 ative of *kći*
 kilometre, kilometer
 cinema, movie
 from the cinema, from the
 movie
 sculpture
 sculptor
 rainy
 climate
 literature
 which
 cake
 how many, how much
 railway-station
 small piece
 to compose
 composer
 concert (adj.)
 concert hall
 waiter
 waitress
 continental
 convention

kòšara (f.)
 u kòšari
 kòštati
 kòliko to sve kòšta?
 kráj (m.)
 na kráju
 kraj
 králj (m.)
 krásan, krásna, o
 krèvet (m.)
 u krèvetu
 křpa (f.)
 blijed kao křpa
 krùh (m.)
 krùmpir (m.)
 krv (m.)
 luća (f.)
 kòd kuće
 kuhati (kùham)
 kùla (f.)
 kùltúra (f.)
 kùlturan, kùlturna, o
 kùna (f.)
 kùpac (m.)
 kùpalište (n.)
 sùmporno kùpalište
 kùpanje (n.)
 kùpiti (kùpim)
 kùpovati (kùpujem)
 butja (f.)
 lutjevački, a, o
 kùtjevački burgúndac

basket
 in the basket
 to cost
 how much does all that cost,
 what is the price of all that?
 end; a part of the country (lit-
 erally); home, homeland,
 fatherland
 at the end; stári kráj – old
 mother country, old father-
 land; *stári kráj* when used
 by Croatian emigrants in
 America means *Croatia*
 near
 king
 beautiful, nice, handsome
 bed
 in bed
 rag
 pale as death
 bread
 potato
 blood
 house
 at home; izvòlite ù kuću –
 please come into the house
 to cook
 tower
 culture
 cultural
 kuna
 buyer
 bathing-place, watering-place
 sulphur spa, thermae
 swimming, bathing
 to buy
 to buy
 manor house; old aristocratic
 house, country house of
 gentry
 from Kùtjevo
 the name of a red or white
 wine

L L

laku nóć lažan, žna, o lèd (m.) lètjeti (lètim) lijép, lijépa, lijépo òvdje je vrlo lijépo lijépo lijévi, a, o líker (m.) limunáda (f.) lítira (f.) Líjadić Líjadićev dvórac lúk (m.) lúka (f.) lútka (f.)	good night false, untrue ice to fly nice, beautiful it is very nice here; káko je lijép (m.) – how nice it is nice left liqueur lemonade litre (liter), about 1 3/4 pints Livadić, a Croatian composer Livadić's castle onions port doll
---	--

228

LJ LJ

ljepòta (f.) ljèti ljetòvalište (n.) ljúbav (f.) ljùbičast, a, o ljúdi (pl.)	beauty in summer summer holiday resort love violet people
---	--

M M

máćak (m.) máćka (f.) magistrála (f.) májka (m.) málen, a, o máli	male cat, tom-cat cat motorway, highway, road mother small, little little
--	--

málo
màma (f.)
Márkov trǵ (m.)
màslac (m.)
mášta (f.)
màterinski, a, o
 màterinski jèzik
màtica (f.)

me

ròditelji me čekaju

meditèranski, a, o
mi
mijénjati (mijénjam)
minúta (f.)
 za pèt minúta
mír (m.)
 na míru
mírisan, sna, o
mísao, misli (f.)
mísliti (míslim)
 štò tí míslíš?
mjèsto (n.)
mjèsto (prep.)
mlád, a, o
mládi, a, o
mlíjeko (n.)
mnògi, a, o
mnògo
mòdar, mòdra, o
mój, mòja, mòje
mòji (m. pl.)
mòlim, mòlim vas
 mòlim vas òvaj cìveni
 stólnjak?
mórati (móram)
móre (n.)
móst (m.)
mòžda

little, a little
mother, mummy
St. Mark's Square
butter
fancy, imagination, fantasy
mother, motherly, maternal
mother tongue, native tongue
queen bee, mother bee, hive,
bee-hive; in the name
»Hrvatska matica iseljenika«
the word *matica* is used as a metaphor and means: centre, core, pith
me; *me* is the Accusative of the personal pronoun *ja*
(my) parents are waiting for me

Mediterranean
we
to change
minute
in five minutes
peace
in peace
aromatic, fragrant
thought
to think
what do you (thou) think?
place
instead of
young
young
milk
many
much, a lot of, a great deal of
blue
my
my
please
give me this red table-cloth,
please?
must
sea
bridge
perhaps

229

mútan, mútna, o múzej (m.) múzički, a, o múž (m.)	muddy museum musical husband
--	---------------------------------------

N N

na na móre	to, on to the sea-side; na móstu – on the bridge
nàcionalan, nàcionalna, o nàdesno náglo nàlaziti se (nàlazim se)	national on the right rapidly, quickly to be situated, to be found, to find oneself
nàlazi se nàjljepši, a, e napúštati (napúštam) náravno	there is; nalaze se – there are the most beautiful to leave naturally, surely, certainly, of course
nárezak (m.) hládni náresci (pl.)	cut, a slice of something (ham, sausages, etc.) cold cuts; slices of various sorts of sausages, salamis, ham or cheese eaten as the first course of the meal (hors d'oeuvre)
národ (m.) národni, a, o narúčiti (nàručim) nas náslov (m.) násljede (n.) nastúpiti (nàstupim) nasùprot nàš, a, e naùčiti (nàučim) náziv (m.) názvan, a, o ono je názvano názvati (názovem)	people national to order us name, title tradition to take part in the programme opposite our to learn name, title, term named, called it was named (called) to name, to call, to get a name

230

nè nèbo (n.) nèboder (m.) nèdaleko od nèdavno nèdjelja (f.) nègo nèkadašnji, a, e nèki nèkoć nèkoliko neòbično nèšto nètko Nikola Šubić Zrinski	not sky skyscraper not far off (away) from recently, lately Sunday but former, sometime some once upon a time a few, some unusually something someone Nikola Šubić Zrinski, the Croatian national hero who fought the Turks; also, the title of the Croatian nation- al opera
nísam nísmo ništa niško, nìkoga nóbelovac (n.) nóc (f.) laku nóc noga (f.) nòsiti (nòsim) nóšnja (f.) národna nóšnja (f.) nòv, a, o nòvi, a, o nòvac (m.)	I am not we are not nothing nobody, no one a Nobel prize winner night good night leg to wear costume national costume new new money

231

NJ

NJ

njegov, a, o Njemačka (f.) njézin, a, o njihov, a, o	his Germany her their
---	--------------------------------

<p>o o doručku oáza (f.) obala (f.) običan, obična, o objed (m.) štò ima za objed objedovati (objedujem) obláčiti se (oblačim se) oblačno obučen, obučena, o od odakle odakle si (ti)? odista odlaziti (odlazim) odličan, odlična, o to je odlično odmah</p> <p>232</p> <p>odmah, molim</p> <p>odmaralište (n.) održati (održim) održati se (održim se) održavati se (održavam se) oko oko Samobora okolica (f.) iz okolice Zagreba</p> <p>olovka (f.) on, ona, ono onaj, ona, ono ono tamo je onakav, onakva, onakvo</p> <p>onda, onda ondje opera (f.) Metropoliten òpera</p>	<p>about about breakfast oasis coast, shore ordinary, usual lunch what have we got for lunch? to have lunch to dress (oneself) cloudy dressed from where from where do you come from? indeed, trully, really to depart, to go away excellent that is excellent presently, immediately, at once, straight off I am just coming; I am coming right now resting-place, hotel to be held to take place, to be held to be held, to take place around, about, round about around Samobor neighbourhood, surroundings from the neighbourhood of Zagreb pencil he, she, it that that over there is such a one (man, person), of that kind (sort, nature, quality) then there opera Metropolitan Opera House</p>
---	---

òpet
òrah (m.)
 òrahovo stáblo (n.)
organizácija (f.)
òrkestar (m.)
òsam
òsamljen
òsamnaesta (f.)
òsma (f.)
òsim toga
òsnòvati (òsnujem)

òsobno
òstali, a, o
ostaviti (òstavim)
otkriven, otkrivena, o
otok (m.)
otvorénje (n.)
òsobito, òsobito
òvaj, òva, òvo
òvdje
òvo je

again
walnut
walnut-tree
organization
orchestra
eigth
alone
eighteenth
eighth
besides
to found, to set up, to estab-
 lish
personally, in person
the others, the rest
to leave
discovered
island
opening
specially
this
here
this is

pa
palača (f.)
palma (f.)
park (m.)
parket (m.)
 u parketu
pećenje (n.)
 teleće pećenje

pet
peta (f.)
petnaesta (f.)
píće (n.)
 kákvo píće žèlite?

pijetao (m.)

then, so, and, but
palace
palm-tree
park
parket
in the stalls
roast meat
roast veal
five
fifth
fifteenth
drink
what would you like to drink?,
 what sort of drink would
 you like?
cock; the plural of the noun
 pijetao is *pijétlovi*

bòrba pijétlova
 piknik (m.)
 pileći, a, e
 pilići (pl.)
 pòhani pilići (pl.)
 písac (m.)
 piti (pijem)
 što žèlite piti?

 pivo (n.)
 pjèsma (f.)
 pjèsnik (m.)
 pjèšice
 pjèvati (pjèvam)
 plàkati (plàčem)
 planinar (m.)
 plátiti (plátim)
 plávi, a, o
 plèmički, a, o
 plés (m.)
 plivanje (n.)
 bàzen za plivanje
 plòča (f.)
 plòčnik (m.)
 po
 pòčeti (pòčnem)
 póci (pódem)
 pódimo
 pod

 pod naslovom
 pòdmladak (m.)
 pódne (n.)
 pòslije pódne
 pòdno
 pòdno brijéga
 pòdrijetlo (n.)
 pògled (n.)

 pògled s balkóna
 pògledati (pògledam)

 pòhan, a, o

a cock-fight
 picnic
 chicken
 chicken
 deep-fried spring-chicken
 writer
 to drink
 what would you like to drink?,
 what do you want to
 drink?; što pijete? – what
 do you drink?
 beer
 song
 poet
 on foot
 to sing
 to cry
 mountaineer, climber
 to pay
 blue
 noble, aristocratic
 dance
 swimming
 swimming-pool
 record, gramophone record
 pavement
 for
 begin
 to go, to set off
 let's go
 under, below, beneath, to-
 wards, at
 under the title
 progeny, issue, young people
 afternoon
 in the afternoon
 at the foot
 at the foot of the hill
 origin, stock, extraction
 view

 a view from the balcony
 to have a look

 fried

pokázati (pòkažem)
 pòkloniti (pòklonim)

 pòkraj
 pòlaziti (pòlazim)
 pòlje (n.)
 pòljski, a, o
 poljúbiti (pòljubim)
 pomagati (pòmažem)
 pònosan, pònosna, o
 pònosni smo
 pònovno
 pòpiti (pòpijem)
 idemo nešto pòpiti

 žèlite li nešto pòpiti?

 pòpularan, pòpularna, o
 pòrcija (f.)
 Pòsavina (f.)

 pòsavski, a, o
 pòsjećen, a, o
 pòsjetiti (pòsjetim)
 idemo pòsjetiti
 pòsvuda
 pòšta (f.)
 pòtjecati (pòtječem)

 pòtok (m.)
 povésti se (povézem se)
 pòvijest (f.)
 pòvratak (m.)
 na pòvratku
 poznat, a, o
 poznávati (pòznajem)

 poznávati se (pòznajem se)
 práti (pèrem)
 práv, a, o
 právi, a, o
 pèd
 pèd nama
 pèdak (m.)
 pèdgrade (n.)

to show
 to give as a gift, to donate, to
 present
 beside, near
 to leave, to start, to set off
 field
 Polish
 to kiss
 to help
 proud
 we are proud
 again
 to drink (up)
 let's have something to drink,
 let's have a drink
 would you like something to
 drink?
 popular
 portion, helping
 Posavina, a part of Croatia
 along the river Sava
 Posavina, from Posavina
 visited
 to visit
 we are going to visit
 everywhere, all over
 post-office
 to date from, to date back to,
 to originate
 brook
 take for a ride (drive)
 history
 way back, return
 on the way back
 well-known
 to know, to understand, to be
 acquainted
 to know one's self
 to wash
 real, genuine
 real, genuine
 in front of
 in front of us
 ancestor, progenitor
 suburbs, outskirts

prèdsjednik (m.)
 prèdstava (f.)
 prèkrasan, prèkrasna, o
 prèma
 prèma dòmovini
 priča (f.)
 pričati (pričam)
 prijatelj (m.)
 prijateljica (f.)
 prije
 prikazivati se (prikazujem se)
 primjer (m.)
 na primjer
 .Primorje (n.)
 Hrvatsko primorje (n.)
 prirodni, a, o
 prodavač (m.)
 prodavačica (f.)
 prodavaonica (f.)
 prodavaonica rukotvòrina
 promijeniti (promijenim)
 mògu li promijeniti stò
 dòlara
 pròstrijeti (pròstrem)
 pròstrt
 pròtiv
 pròsluk (m.)
 prtljága (f.)
 pìvi, a, o
 pùn, a, o
 pút (m.)
 na pútu do »Màtica«
 pùtnik (m.)
 putovati (putujem)
 sùtra putujemo u Zàgreb

236

president
 performance, show
 wonderful, exceptionally
 beautiful, grand, gorgeous
 towards
 towards the homeland
 story, fable, tale
 to tell, to talk
 friend
 girl friend
 formerly, previously
 to perform
 example
 for example, for instance

littoral
 Croatian Littoral
 natural
 salesman, shop-assistant
 saleswoman, female shop-
 -assistant
 shop
 shop where hand-made goods
 are sold
 to change
 can I change a hundred
 dollars
 lay, set, spread
 laid, set, spread
 against
 waistcoat
 luggage
 first
 full
 way
 on the way to »Matica«
 traveller, voyager, passenger
 to travel
 we are travelling to Zagreb
 tomorrow

R

račun (m.)
 mòlim račun
 rádiiti (rádim)
 štò rádiš
 rádio, rádiija (m.)
 ràdo
 vrlo ràdo
 ràdost (f.)
 ràkija (f.)
 ràtnik (m.)
 ràvno
 ràvno u Split
 ràzglédati (ràzgliedam)
 ràzgòvarati (ràzgòvaram)
 o čèmu ràzgòvarate?
 ràzgovor (m.)
 ràzvesèliti se (ràzveselim se)
 ràzvìjati se (ràzvìjam se)
 ràznjiči (pl.)
 reći (rèčem)
 réd (m.)
 u rédu
 repùblika (f.)
 Trg bána Jèlačića (m.)
 restòran (m.)
 u restoránu
 rijèč (f.)
 jèdnom rijèčju
 rizòto (m.)
 rod (m.)
 roditelj (m.)
 roditi (ròdim)

R

bill
 can I have the bill, please; the
 check, please; izvòlite rà-
 čun – take the bill, please
 to work
 what are you (thou, s.) do-
 ing?; štò ráдите? – what are
 you doing?
 radio, wireless
 gladly
 very gladly, very much, with
 pleasure
 happiness, joy
 brandy
 warrior
 straight, in direction of
 straight to Split
 to have a look around, inspect
 to talk
 what are you talking about?
 talk, conversation
 to cheer up, to gladden, to be
 delighted
 to develop
 ràznjiči, bits of pork broiled
 on a skewer and served
 with chopped raw onions
 to say, to tell
 queue, line; turn
 in a queue, in a line; sàd smo
 mí na rédu – it is our turn
 now; u rédu – all right
 republic
 Ban Jelačić's Square
 restaurant
 in the restaurant
 word
 in a word
 rissoto
 descent, birth
 parent
 give birth to, be delivered of a
 child

237

ròditi se ròdoljub (m.) ròdak (m.) romàntičan, romàntična, o rùblje (n.) rúka (f.) rukotvòrina (f.)	to be born patriot relative romantic linen, clothes hand a hand-made article, thing produced or manufactured by hand Russian rose
rùski, a, o rúža (f.)	

S

S

238

s, sa Sábor (m.) sàd(a) sàgraden, a, o salàta (f.) sám, a, o sàmo	with Assembly, Parliament now built salad alone only, nothing else, merely, solely, purely
Sámobor (m.) Samobórac (m.)	Samobor, a town near Zagreb a native of the town of Sa- mobor; also, a popular name for the train which runs from Zagreb to Samobor
u »Samobórcu«	in the »Samoborec« train; mòžemo li íci »Samobór- ceím«? – can we go on the »Samoborec« train?
sàmoborski, a, o	Samobor (adj.), from Samo- bor
sàv, svà, svè svè je u rédu savijača (f.)	everything everything is all right strudel, kind of pastry made of rolled out paste filled with fruit
sèdam sedàmnaesta (f.) sédma (f.) sèlo (n.) sèljak (m.)	seven seventeenth seventh village peasant

sèljanka (f.) sèstra (f.) síci (sídem) sigurno sín (m.) sínji, a, e siròmašan, siròmašna, o sirov, a, o sív, a, o sjècati se (sjècam se) sjèdište (n.) sjèditi (sjèdim), sjèsti (sjèd- nem) izvòlite sjèsti, izvòli sjèsti

skúp, a, o slàdak, slátka, o slàdoled (m.) slávan, slávna, o Slàvonija (f.)	skúp, a, o slàdak, slátka, o slàdoled (m.) slávan, slávna, o Slàvonija (f.)
sličan, slična, slično slijèditi (slijèdim) slijedi kao noć za danom slika (f.) slikar (m.) slikòvit, a, o slòbodan, slòbodna, o slúšati (slúšam) slúžben, a, o smirenost (f.)	sličan, slična, slično slijèditi (slijèdim) slijedi kao noć za danom slika (f.) slikar (m.) slikòvit, a, o slòbodan, slòbodna, o slúšati (slúšam) slúžben, a, o smirenost (f.)

smjèti (smjèjem) nè smije snàha (f.) snímiti (snímim) sòba (f.) sók (m.) vòčni sók Split (m.)	smjèti (smjèjem) nè smije snàha (f.) snímiti (snímim) sòba (f.) sók (m.) vòčni sók Split (m.)
spòmenik (m.) spòminjati se (spòminjem se) spòminje se	spòmenik (m.) spòminjati se (spòminjem se) spòminje se

peasant-woman sister to come down, to go down certainly, surely, undoubtedly son blue poor raw grey to remember seat to sit down, to take a seat please (do) sit down, take a seat, please; the form <i>izvòli</i> is used in addressing close friends or relatives
--

expensive sweet, nice ice-cream famous Slavonia, the eastern part of Croatia similar, analogous, alike to follow, to come after it follows as the night the day picture painter picturesque free, unoccupied, unreserved to listen to official appeasement, peace, acquies- cence to be allowed, to dare, ought ought not daughter-in-law to shoot room juice fruit juice Split, a town on the Croatian coast monument mention is mentioned

239

srèca (f.)
 srèbrni, a, o
 srèdnji, a, e
 srètan, srètna, o
 srètan pút (m.)
 stáblo (m.)
 stàjati (stòjim)
 stàr, a, o (indefinite adj.)
 stàri, a, o (definite adj.)
 stàrac (m.)
 starìna (f.)

stó
 stòg(a)
 stól (m.)
 stól je pròstr

stólnjak (m.)
 stòljeće (n.)
 stòtina (f.)
 strána (f.)
 s dèсне stráне

stránac (m.)
 stríc (m.)
 strijéla (f.)
 Stùbica (f.)

 Stùbičke Tòplice (pl.)

stùdent (m.)
 stvár (m.)
 stvòriti (stvòrim)
 sùbota (f.)
 sùmporan, sùmporna, o
 sùnce (n.)
 sùnčano
 sùprug (m.)
 sùpruga (f.)
 sùptropski, a, o
 sùsjeda (f.)
 sùtra (n.)

happiness
 silver
 central
 happy
 have a good (safe) trip
 tree-trunk
 to cost
 old
 old
 old man
 thing of a special historic interest, monument
 a hundred
 therefore; on that account
 table
 the table is laid; na stolu – on the table
 the table
 table-cloth
 century
 a hundred
 side
 on the right-hand side; s lijeve stráне – on the left-hand side
 stranger
 uncle
 arrow
 Stubica, a small place in Croatian Zagorye where the famous peasants' rebellion took place (1573)
 a small place with the spa of Stubičke toplice
 student
 thing, matter
 create, form, make, mould
 Saturday
 sulphur, sulphurous
 sun
 sunny
 husband
 wife
 subtropical
 female neighbour
 tomorrow

svàk, a, o
 svàke sùbote i nèdjelje
 svè
 svèkrva (f.)
 svèt, a, o
 svi
 svìdjeti (svìdim se)
 svìdati se (svìdam se)

 vìlo nam se svída
 svída mi se
 svijét (m.)
 na svijétu

svijétao, svijétla, o
 svijétlost (f.)
 svjètski, a, o
 svjètski pútnik (m.)
 svój, svòja, svòje

every
 every Saturday and Sunday
 everything, all
 mother-in-law
 holy
 all
 to please, to appeal to
 to please, to appeal to

we like it very much, it appeals to us very much
 I like it
 world
 in the world; iz cijélog svijéta – from all over the world
 light, bright
 light
 world
 world traveller
 his, your

šesnaesta (f.)
 šest
 šesta (f.s.)
 šetnja (f.)
 šlager (m.)
 šljivovica (f.)
 Šmidhenov, a, o
 Šmidhenovo kùpalište (n.)

šofer (m.)
 štáp (m.)
 štò
 štò je tó?

šuma (f.)

sixteenth
 six
 sixth
 walk
 pop-song
 plum-brandy
 Šmidhen's
 Šmidhen's bathing place,
 Šmidhen's spa
 driver
 stick, walking-stick
 what, that
 what is this?; štò prije – very soon, as soon as possible
 forest, wood

tàda
táj (m.), tá (f.), tó (n.)
tájnik (m.)
tākav, tākva, tākvo

tàko
tako je

takóder
tambùraški, a, o

tàmo
tàda
tàta (m.)
tè
tèčaj (m.)
ték (m.)
dòbar ték
tèk

teleći, a, e
teràsa (f.)
téško
tètka (f.)
tí
tìsuća (f.)
tjèdan (m.)
òvog tjèdna
tkò
tlò (n.)
tó
tó je
tòliko, toliko
Tòmislav (m.)

tòpao, tòpla, o

then
this
secretary
such (a), of such kind (sort,
manner, shape, size char-
acter)
so
that's right, this is so (literal
translation)
also, too
tamburitza(n); the adjective
tambùraški comes from the
word *tamburica* which de-
notes a kind of musical in-
strument played in
Croatia

there
then
daddy, father
and
course
appetite
good appetite
only, not earlier than, not un-
til

veal
terrace
difficult
aunt
you (thou)
a thousand
week
this week
who
ground
this
this is, it is
so much
Tomislav, the name of the
first Croatian king
warm

tòplice (pl.)
toplina (f.)
tràdicija (f.)
tràmvaj (m.)
tràmvajem
trèci, a, e
trèšnja (f.)
trideseti, a, o
trig (m.)
trgòvina (f.)
tri
trinaesta (f.)
Trògir (m.)

Tùheljske Tòplice (pl.)

Túrci (pl.)
tùrist (m.)
tùristički, a, o
tùrski, a, o
tvój, tvòja, tvòje

spa
warmth
tradition
tram, street-car
by tram
third
cherry
the thirtieth
square
trade
three
thirteenth
Trogir, a town on the Croa-
tian coast
a place with the spa of Tu-
heljske toplice, a
well-known spa in
Croatian Zagorye

Turks
tourist
tourist
Turkish
your

u
učenica (f.)
učiti (učim)
štò učite?

úci (údem)

izvòlite úci

ùdoban, ùdobna, o
i kàko je ùdoban
ùgodan, ùgodna, ùgodno
ukinuti (ùkinem)

in
pupil
to learn, to study
what are you learning (study-
ing)? učimo – we are learn-
ing (studying)
to come in, to enter, to get
into
please come in; will you
please come in; izvòlite úci
u mój àuto – will you get
into my car, please
comfortable, cosy
and how comfortable it is
pleasant
abolish

ùkusan, ùkusna, o
kòlač je vrlo ùkusan
ùlica (f.)
ùloga (f.)
umívati se (ùmívam se)
ùmjetnost (f.)
ùmoran, ùmorna, o
jèste li ùmorni?

upòznati (upòznam)
ùpravo
ùred (m.)
ùskoro
ùsluga (f.)
uspínjača (f.)
ùvala (f.)
ùvijek
uz
uz to
ùzeti (uzmem)
ùzbuden, a, o
ùzbudena (f.) sam
ùzduž
ùzduž òbale
uzgájati (uzgajam)
ùžina (f.)

tasty, tasteful
the cake is very tasty
street
role, part
to wash (oneself)
art
tired
are you tired?; jèsi li ùmorna
(f.) – are you tired?
to get to know
just, directly, exactly, precisely
office
soon, in a short time
service
fornicular
cove, small bay
always
besides, in addition
besides this, in addition to this
to take
excited
I am excited
along
along the coast
raise, grow
a light repast; this is an in-
-between meal served be-
-tween lunch and dinner
(supper)

V

vàni
vàš, a, e
vèčer (m.)
dòbar vèčer

vèčera (f.)
štò imate za vèčeru?

večeras

outside
your
evening
good evening

dinner, supper
what have we got for dinner?
hvála na vèčeri – thank you
for the dinner (supper)
this evening

vèčerati (vèčeram)
hòćete li vèčerati?

vèč
vèlik, a, o
vèrmut (m.)
vesèliti se (vesèlim se)
vesèlje (n.)

vi
vidjeti (vidim)
vidiš li?

víno (f.)
lítira vína

visok, a, o
vjeròjatno, vjèrojatno
vjèžba (f.)
vláda (f.)
vlák (m.)
vlákom
vòće (pl.)
vòćni, a, o
vòda (f.)
vòditi (vòdim)
vòlja (f.)
vòljeti (vòlim)
(ja) vòlim
vòziti (vòzim)

ona vòzi izletnike i
pláninare
vòžnja (f.)
vrátiti se (vráćam se)
vrèva (f.)
vrh (m.)
vrijéme (n.)
némamo mnògo vrèmena.

to have dinner (supper)
would you like to have din-
-ner?, do you want to have
dinner?

already
great, big, large
vermouth
to rejoice
merry-making, entertainment
you
to see
can you (s.) see?; žèlimo vid-
-jeti – we want to see
wine
a litre of wine; izvòlite vína –
please have some wine

tall, high
probably
lesson
government
train
by train
fruit
fruit
water
to lead, to go, to conduct
wish
to like
I like
to drive or be driven in a car,
bus, etc.; take, drive, con-
-vey in a vehicle or public
conveyance; to run (of
trains and buses)
she takes (carries) excursionists
and mountaineers
drive, ride
to come back
tumult, crowd, multitude
top
time; weather
we do not have much time;
vrèmena is the Genitive of
the noun vrijeme; za vrijeme
- during

vřlo	very
vřlo dõbro	very well
vřt (m.)	garden
u vřtu	in the garden
vřúće	hot
jáko je vřúće	it is very hot

Z

Z

za	for
za vas	for you
zabõraviti (zabõravim)	to forget
zacijelo	surely, certainly, undoubtedly, I daresay
Zadar (m.)	Zadar, a town (city) on the Croatian coast
zadovoljan	satisfied, content, pleased
zágorski, a, o	from Zagorye
Zágreb (m.)	Zagreb, capital of Croatia
zágrebački, a, o	Zagreb, from Zagreb
zágrebački trãmvaj	Zagreb tram
zãjednica (f.)	union
Hrvatska brãtska zãjednica	Croatian Fraternal Union
zãjedniãar (m.)	fraternalist
zãjedno	together
svi zãjedno	all together
zãista	really
õvdje je zãista lijépo	it is really nice here
zãkasniti (zãkasnim)	to be late
zalúdu, úzalud	in vain, uselessly, of no avail
zãnimljiv, a, o	interesting
zãpjevati (zãpjevam)	to start singing
zãplakati (zãplaãem)	to burst into tears
zãr	really
zãšto	why
zãtim	then, after, that, afterwards
zãto	therefore, because
zãto štõ	because
zãuzeti (zãuzmem)	conquer, capture
zdrãv, a, o	healthy
zelen, a, o	green

zèmlja (f.)
Zelénjak (m.)

country, native country
Zelenjak; the place in the
woods, now a park, where
Antun Mihanoviã, a Croa-
tian poet, wrote a poem
which later became the
Croatian anthem

zgrãda (f.)
zidine (m. pl.)
znãiti (znãim)
znãiti (znãm, znãdem)
zràk (m.)
Zrínjevac (m.)

building
the walls
to mean
to know
air
Zrinjevac, name of a square in
Zagreb
to call
it is called
to be called, to have a name

zvãti (zõvem)
ljúdi ga zõvu
zvãti se (zõvem se)

to call
it is called
to be called, to have a name

Ž

Ž

žào mi je
žbúnje (n.)
žédan, žédna, o
žédan sam
željati (želim)
želite li?

I am sorry
shrubs, bushes
thirsty
I am thirsty
to want
do you want?; would you
like?; želite li likera? –
would you like a liqueur?;
štõ želite, gõspõdo? – what
would you like, madam?;
what can I do for you,
madam?; želimo – we want

život, života (m.)
željznica (f.)
željno
žena (f.)
živjeti (živim)
život, života (m.)
žuriti se (žurim se)
žut, a, o

life
railway
anxiously, eagerly
wife
to live
life
to hurry, to be in a hurry
yellow

(the references are to pages — brojevi označuju stranice u knjizi)

accents (naglasak)	16
adjectives (pridjevi)	27-8, 96-7
masculine (muški rod)	27-8, 40, 47, 69
feminine (ženski rod)	28, 40, 47, 69
neuter (srednji rod)	40, 69
plural of (množina),	28, 47, 69
indefinite (neodređeni),	96-7, 100, 107-8
definite (određeni),	96-7, 107-8
declension of indefinite (sklonidba neodređenih),	101
declension of definite (sklonidba određenih),	106-8
declension of the comparative and the superlative (sklonidba komparativa i superlativa)	157
the adjective stem (osnova pridjeva)	154
comparative (komparativ)	155-6, 157
superlative (superlativ)	156, 157
irregular (nepravilni),	156
pronominal adjective <i>sam</i> (zamjenički pridjev <i>sam</i>)	188
adverbs (prilozi)	
adjectival adverbs (pridjevi u službi priloga)	175
alphabet (abeceda)	16
articles (članovi)	
absence of,	34
aspect (vid)	
verbal aspect (glagolski vid)	167
assimilation (jotacija)	154
be (to), (biti)	
present tense of (sadašnje vrijeme),	32-4, 180-1
future tense of (buduće vrijeme),	117-18
perfect tense of (perfekt),	128-30
stems of (osnove),	185
imperative of (imperativ ili zapovjedni način),	186
conjunctions (veznici)	
<i>and</i> (<i>i</i>)	40

consonants (konsonanti ili suglasnici)	17
voiced and unvoiced (zvučni i bezvučni)	168
consonant <i>b</i>	23
consonant <i>c</i>	18
consonant <i>č</i>	23
consonant <i>ć</i>	23
consonant <i>d</i>	22
consonant <i>dž</i>	40
consonant <i>đ</i>	35
consonant <i>g</i>	24
consonant <i>h</i>	29
consonant <i>j</i>	22
consonant <i>k</i>	24
consonant <i>l</i>	29-30
consonant <i>m</i>	28
consonant <i>n</i>	29
consonant <i>nj</i>	48
consonant <i>p</i>	28
consonant <i>s</i>	29
consonant <i>š</i>	23
consonant <i>t</i>	24
consonant <i>v</i>	28
consonant <i>z</i>	30
consonant <i>ž</i>	18-19
consonantal changes (konsonantalne promjene)	74-5, 168-9
enclitics (enklitike)	147
future tense (buduće vrijeme)	117-18
have (to), (imati)	
present tense of,	38-9
imperative (imperativ ili zapovjedni način)	173-4
imperative of <i>reći</i>	174
imperative of <i>pomoći</i>	174
infinitive (infinitiv)	56
infinitive base (infinitivna osnova)	131-2
interrogative conjunction (upitna čestica) <i>zar</i>	119
mobile <i>a</i> (nepostojano <i>a</i>)	52, 75-6
nouns (imenice)	
masculine (muški rod),	34, 39, 51-2
feminine (ženski rod),	34, 39-40, 61
neuter (srednji rod),	39, 56

declension of m. nouns (sklonidba imenica m. roda)	44-5
declension of f. nouns (sklonidba imenica ž. roda)	55, 124
declension of n. nouns (sklonidba imenica s. roda)	68
<i>daughter</i> (kći)	40
<i>flowers</i> (cvijeće)	46
past participle	
active past participle (pridjev radni ili aktivni)	130-1
— of <i>vidjeti</i>	132
— of <i>živjeti</i>	132
— of <i>reći</i>	136
— of <i>jesti</i>	136
— of <i>ići</i>	175
perfect tense (perfekt ili prošlo vrijeme)	128-30
use of,	136
prepositions (prijedlozi)	69-70
<i>do</i> (to, as far as, till, until)	132
<i>duž</i> (along)	175
<i>iz</i> (from)	125
<i>kod</i> (at)	175
<i>kraj</i> (near, beside)	162
<i>na</i> (on, for, in)	76
<i>nasuprot</i> (opposite, facing)	143
<i>o</i> (about)	83
<i>od</i> (from, of, than)	175
<i>osim</i> (besides)	175
<i>s, sa</i> (with)	157
<i>u</i> (in, to, into)	69-70
<i>za</i> (for, behind)	119
present conditional (kondicional prvi)	161-2
present tense (sadašnje vrijeme)	88-9
— of <i>biti</i> (to be)	32-4
— of <i>htjeti</i> (to want, to wish for)	112-13
— of <i>ići</i> (to go)	61-2
— of <i>imati</i> (to have)	38-9
— of <i>kupovati</i> (to buy)	81-2
— of <i>moći</i> (to be able)	87-88
— of <i>voljeti</i> (to like)	46-7
pronouns (zamjenice)	
masculine (muški rod)	34, 47

feminine (ženski rod)	34
neuter (srednji rod)	82
pronoun <i>on</i>	142-3
pronoun <i>ona</i>	131, 143
pronoun <i>one</i>	131
demonstrative pronouns (pokazne zamjenice)	
<i>ovaj, taj, onaj</i>	181
personal (lične),	140-3, 147-9
possessive (posvojne),	82
possessive pronoun (posvojna zamjenica) <i>svoj, a, e</i>	186-7
reflexive pronoun (lična povratna zamjenica)	
<i>sebe ili se</i>	149-50
pronunciation (izgovor)	16
verbs (glagoli)	88-9
imperfective and perfective (nesvršeni i svršeni),	88-9
reflexive (refleksivni),	95-6
verb (glagol) <i>vidjeti</i>	132
verb (glagol) <i>živjeti</i>	132
verbal aspect (glagolski vid)	167
vowels (samoglasnici)	17
vowel (samoglasnik) <i>a</i>	17
vowel <i>e</i>	21
vowel <i>i</i>	22
vowel <i>o</i>	17
vowel <i>u</i>	22
vowel, consonant (samoglasnik, suglasnik) <i>r</i>	18
you (ti, vi)	34